FROM TYNE TO TONE.

A Journey.

Harold Heslop.
The village of New Hunwick lay upon the once beautiful face of south-west Durham like a festering wound. Across the fields, Old Hunwick still hugged the church and held aloof, but that was no condemnation of the village, for in actuality there was little that might distinguish it from any of the other places where coal-measures were wrought and scabbed the face of nature. Taken on the whole, Old Hunwick was ancient and New Hunwick was merely a clutter of houses which had been hastily assembled to house the families of the men who broached the shallows of the earth wherein lay seams of the finest quality coal. No regard had been paid to the fact that the surrounding acres had once been part of an agricultural arrangement which was old when men had begun to build the cathedral church above the River Wear some few miles distant. Hunwick, let it be said, was not by any means the most disreputable village in the neighbourhood, even if its makers had managed to deface all its ancient heritages. It was simply the product of an act complementary to the emerging steam age, an urgent age if ever there was one. Therefore, let no man of the present accuse those miners of a crime because they paid little regard to pollution. The debris which they spilled upon green meadows will not remain permanently disfiguring.

There were many more disgraceful clusters of ill-conditioned houses in that part of Durham than New Hunwick. One thing those early miners did not do and that was expose the pit head as the main feature of the village. Rough Lea Colliery was hidden further down the slope of the valley, near to the railway that ran from Durham to Bishop Auckland. Between the village and the pit head stood an ancient farm house, ringed with poplars. The coal-measures had been breached by a drift which tunnelled towards the village some distance from the farm. The drift leaned into a gentle gradient, as if reluctant to disturb the face of an ancient husbandry that was old before the Bolden Buke was fully compiled.
milled into a clay from which exquisite toilet ware and granite-hard fireclay bricks were manufactured. Rough Lea toilet ware found markets all over the world. The bricks were used to line the smelting furnaces at Cargo Fleet and Jarrow.

In all the urgency of his industrial creations Man rarely essayed so mean and contemptible a habitation of souls worse than that of New Hunwick. The amenities granted were a place to light a fire in order to cook and bake, a communal tap, and, here and there along the streets, a shed which housed a suitably fashioned platform which men designated as "the messy". This lamentable structure strutted from its foul, open box into an wider receptacle into which the contents of "the messy" were raked and covered with ashes from the kitchen fires. When the bin-like receptacle was filled the company carter happened along in his own time and cleared the sorry mess into his coal cart and hauled it on to some ploughed field when the farmer agreed, or took it to some pit. The fearsome structures were built close to the backdoors of the houses. In the summer months the flies became a horrific invasion. Flypapers depended in numbers from the kitchen rafters. The struggles of the trapped flies set up a continuous hum which always interested me.

Few of the houses had more than two bedrooms. All had a kitchen, and some a "front room". In the kitchen all the chores were performed, despite the fact that most held a double bed always occupied by the father and mother of the family. Here the miners reproduced themselves. Here the progeny crawled and dunged until they were picked up and sent off to school.

The women suckled their children until they were almost three years old. They offered a gratuitous love to their children in the form of an open admission to an almost uncovered breast. When the baptism of the child was over and the old crone who had "helped the doctor" at the birth had completed her stint of attendance, the nappies were all collected, washed and ironed, and folded away against the advent of the next child. All the children flailed and ran bare-bottomed and skirted, male as well as female, until they learned control of their bowels, and until they did so it was much less trouble to remove excrement from the floor or the body of a child than to wash napkins. The boys were not "britched" until their bowels were in safe keeping, nor were the girls put
into bloomers. The child that showed a marked disinclination to rectify his urinary behaviour was given a mouse pie to eat, an infallible remedy for bed-wetting. The mouse after being caught was skinned. The flesh was then taken from the bones, and the resulting mass was cooked after the fashion of a sausage roll, and this the child was cajoled to eat. The infallible remedy for uncontrolled anal emission was to burn the discharged mess on the kitchen fire.

The inordinate length of time of suckling a child at the breast was a form of birth control. How efficacious this might have been, or how successful, it is impossible to say. Strangely enough, the time between the births of the first five of my parents' children was in each case twenty-seven months.

The mining folk had to exist in these primitive conditions. Life was shaved to the bone. Wages were meagre. Every member of the group depended upon the masters agreeing to their labouring in or about the mine. A female child was a misfortune which continued until it was old enough to "go out to place". The entire family lived entirely on the earnings of the father, who received no help from any source until "the lads were able to go into the pit". The colliery bred its own workers. It all added up to a simple existence, simple, serious and deadly.

The village possessed few buildings which stood in any relation to the church in size or importance. There were three "places of worship", the Wesleyan, Methodist, the Primitive Methodist and the New Connexion Churches. For any special non-religious occasion, such as a concert or a political meeting, the Temperance Hall was used. This was a grim structure, mainly of galvanized iron, which stood under the rockery. Liquid refreshment could be obtained at the Wheatsheaf Inn, where Jack Richardson rehearsed his brass band, the Helmington Inn, both situated at the Lane Ends, and the Masons Arms at the top end of the village, just opposite the Primitive Methodist Chapel, that is on the road to Crook.

Near the Masons Arms stood the ball alley, an imposing structure if its utter vulgarity was any measure of its aesthetic purpose. It towered to a great height, and was just a buttressed wall, faced smoothly on its playing surface with cement. It stood athwart a playing pitch of compounded clay upon which the two kinds of quoits - clay ends and grass ends - could be played. On this
cemented wall face was played the game of handball. Such a game had fallen into disuse before the first world war. It bore a similarity to the game of "fives", as described in Tom Brown's Schooldays. A bold line was marked across the width of the alley some thirty inches from the ground. This declared space had not to be entered while the ball was in play. Should it do so the opponent received a point and was the one to strike the ball into fresh play. The ball was played with the bare hands, and was driven back against the wall by the players in turn. The one who allowed the ball to go out of play conceded the point to his opponent.

Many tense and fascinating games were played on that alley. The heyday was the visit of the Mordue Brothers, two men who played for wagers and did exhibitions up and down the county. One of the brothers was Jackie Mordue. He was attached to the Sunderland Football Club, and towards the end of his playing career formed one of a famous trio of footballers with Charles Buchan and Frank Cuggy. For a small man, Jack had a hefty manner when dealing with the hard rubber ball on a handball alley. When a big game was in progress the players wore costumes which were highly decorated cotton bloomers, specially knitted stockings and light shoes. In a long game the hands of the players became swollen, sometimes extraordinarily swollen. The men raged at their game. My mother's brother Job was a local adept at the game. He, too, was a footballer of some note, but in the amateur world of the sport. I liked to watch him play, for I somehow felt that I had some share in the glory of his game. I grieved when he lost a point. He was a big boned, fair haired, good looking man, a great coal hewer in his own right, a bottom shooter of immense renown, and a gentle man.

A quoit match was always an occasion set apart for the delactation of grown men. It was always played on clay ends. The hob was embedded in the centre of a clay area. The distance between the two ends was some twenty-one feet. Each hob was driven into the clay and only some three or four inches left exposed. The purpose of the game was to ring the hob. Each end offered a maximum of two points to the successful thrower. The aim of the player was to prevent his opponent from scoring the points, and the main effort of the first thrower was to lip the hob, that is to throw so that his quoit rested forward from the throw.
On the hob. It always amazed me when watching a match to observe the accuracy with which the iron ring was thrown. It was an exercise undergone by strong men, of unerring aim and judgment, and immense muscular power. Magnificent were the duels that were fought in those days. Champions declared themselves, and champions hurled their challenges to the rest of the world from the small ads columns of the Northern Echo and the Newcastle Evening Chronicle.

Crass ends was different. This was a game for old men and boys. The aim was to ring the quoit, but one was satisfied to get his quoit nearer to the hob than one's opponent. Disputes about distance from the hob was settled by the referee who employed the length of his arm from elbow to finger end, the width of four fingers, an extra finger or a matchetick. Measurement was always empirical in and around the mines.

They played other games in the mining areas, games which I have rarely seen duplicated elsewhere. There was tippot, a prodigious exercise. The cat was a short piece of wood pointed at each end. The four sides were numbered I, II, III and X. A sharp blow on the point with a stick threw the cat upwards, and then it was struck forward again. The distances of each throw were measured by the stick, and in the time-honoured way. The winner was the one who covered the greater distance. Curiously enough, this game was not confined to children. I have seen grown men gamble heavily on the cat. Another game was that of knurr and spell, an ingenious game, and possibly the one calling for the greatest skill of all. The knurr was actually a ball of wood, mainly ash, fashioned by nothing more than a sharp pen knife. This ball was placed into the cup of the spell which was tensed against a powerful spring. The players each held a club, an instrument fashioned from a stouter piece of ash which was planed to a smooth "face", and attached to long stick. The player took his stance, released the spring with a touch from the club, and struck the ball while it was in the air. Distance was the deciding factor in this game, and this was measured by a chosen length of stick, and the finer measurements in the old way of palm and finger.

Most of the miners were uninterested in religion. There was enough chapel and church space to accommodate them all had they wished. Few accepted the duty laid upon them by any place of worship. The majority of the males played a
languid waiting game from mid-day on Saturday until bedtime on Sunday. There was little else they could do. A journey to Bishop Auckland on Saturday evening was the most ambitious journey for most men. If there was some pitch and toss being played in some quiet lane many would wander thither and gamble what little they had in their pockets, or merely to watch and advise if they were empty. As wages were paid fortnightly the intervening week-end was as barren as a ditch. They left their women folk, fully aproned, to gossip across the spaces between the rows of houses, unmindful of the stenches from the open middens, and to shout their remarks without regard to charity. The children, who attended the Little School until they were transferred to the Big School near the church, took the weekends into their keeping and were happy in some large, indefinable way. Their lives until they went into the pit or to place were rested over the weekends.

Both Hunwicks were screened from the colliery and the towering shale tip, and both constituted a village that was withdrawn from the scene of its own industry. Rough Lea was a place where mining was carried out in singularly simple forms. The tubs of coal were dragged out of the mine in long trains, or sets, each tub coupled to its neighbour with a three link coupling, by a main and tail haulage system. This was a simple reversible act of haulage. The main hauling rope was wound on to a drum by the steam engine and as a result the set of tubs and the tail rope were drawn to the surface. The tail rope, which was manipulated on the contra-reversing drum on the engine passed over a return wheel deep in the pit. By reversing the process, the empty set of tubs and the main rope were dragged back into the mine by the tail rope. The train of full tubs was received on to the pit head. There each tub was weighed in the presence of the checkweighman and ascribed to the number of the token which had been hung inside the tub by the coal hewer. The tubs, as they were treated, were tipped on to a slide which led to the screening apparatus, and passed on to a siding where the empty set was assembled.

On the pit heap all was bustle accompanied by the groaning of machinery. Everything was dull with dust. Men shouted and swore in the gloaming as others went stoutly about the business of the day. The blacksmith hammered pony shoes into shape and sharpened innumerable picks for the next shift of coal hewers.
The screens ground and thumped as the coal was separated into big and small, "roundie and dust". The rejected stuff was channeled to an endless bank of panes which carried it to a high hopper. Here waited the oven loaders with their fantastic wagons into which it was loaded so that it could be transported to the precise coke-oven which was being prepared for its three-day tryst with fire. Labour raged throughout the week from six in the morning until five in the afternoon, except on Saturday when it ended at one o'clock.

About the pit-top lay acres of waste land, the chief feature of which was the colliery pond. Timber lay about in disorderly heaps contrasting with well-stacked formations of good timber, all jostled by the other appurtenances of the mine, rails, baulks, tarred brattice cloth, drums of oil, shattered tubs, and empty trucks. Away from all this happy playground for children crawled a street of colliery houses, which halted almost under the screens. Between the houses and the pit-head ran the railway sidings, a thin path separating coal trucks from the small kitchen gardens. And over all belched the smoke and steam, and into it screamed all the noises of coal production.

I was born in the fourth house down from the Hunwick end of the street, the second child of my parents. I believe that my birth was difficult. My mother, Isabel Heslop, nee Whitfield, had borne my father a son twenty-seven months previously. My father was a little man. I always remember him as being completely bald. Legend begat that when he did have hair it was rufous and ginger. He was a studious man who was determined to make some headway in the mining industry. By the time I was born he had obtained both certificates of competency, one of which was signed by a gentleman called White, and the other by Herbert Henry Asquith. The certificates had been framed and hung upon the chimney breast of the front room. Being possessed of such cartes d'identité he had every reason to hope that one day he might become a more important official than a deputy.

The manager of the entire complex was a small, rotund, bald-headed man called Michael Heslop. He and my grandfather Heslop were sons of brothers, who had wandered into the district after their father's land somewhere in the North Yorkshire dales had been enclosed some time about the passing of the Reform Bill of 1832. How that family of peasants took root among the mining proletariat is a story that has been long forgotten.
Religion bothered the Heslop family all the days of its existence. My father's father, George Heslop, was the possessor of a remarkable tenor voice, a fact vouched for to me by many of his contemporaries. All that it ever got for him was the post of choir master at the Primitive Methodist Chapel. When my father died, in 1935, the gold watch and albert which had been presented to my grandfather when he retired from the post in 1906, was handed over to me. I have it still. My father was a lay preacher on the Bishop Auckland circuit. He took his religion seriously. He could pick a quarrel on a politico-theological point whenever he chose so to do. I cannot recall hearing him preach, but I must have been present when he was occupying the pulpit, for attendance at chapel was mandatory in our family. I am convinced that he was sufficiently instructed in simple theology to make a contribution to simple pulpit oratory. He was a politician in his own way, which was emotional. In the beginning he did lean towards the then burgeoning socialist way of thinking. He read with care The Labour Leader and The Clarion, but being an astute man he did not make his political opinions publicly obvious in his early life. Towards the end of his life he became a member of the Blaydon Conservative Association. But, by then, it was too late.

In those low seams in south west Durham, and I speak of their height being measured in inches, it was necessary to "make height" along the "going ways" by either taking down a slice of the roof or taking up a similar slice from the floor of the seam. In the measures of which I speak the blue shale which enfolded the seams had considerable industrial potentialities. The shale, or "seggar clay", as the miners called it, was fairly easily excavated. It was transported to the surface and built into massive heaps, or tips, where it was left to weather and crumble over immense acres of arable land. The mountains of the shale may have gone from Rough Lea by now, but it is of no moment.

Life in Rough Lea was no different from life in Hunwick. It was just a matter of sustaining life at its lowest point of comfort. No other kind of life was ever intended to exist there. Work was wrought in two daily shifts of hewers and one shift of transport workers. The first shift of hewers commenced at 4 a.m., and ended at 11 a.m., while the second commenced at 9 a.m. and ended at 4 p.m. The overlap at 9 to 11 enabled the men to travel the long distances
underground and make the change-over. The association of men below ground was
known as "marrows". The term is unique in the north east. It is more than a
synonym for "mate". It meant that the man with whom one shared a working place,
or "cawl" shared as marrows down to the last penny earned. Both shifts of
marrows were served by the one shift of putters and transport workers, who
commenced at 6 a.m. and finished at 4 p.m.

Rough Lea was owned by the North Bitchburn Coal Company Limited. It was
more or less a family affair in which the more fortunate of the Heslops played
fairly important roles. How they won their ways into the high places I have
been unable to discover. I believe that religion, or the lack of religion, was
responsible, for none of them belonged to the Primitive Methodist faction. It
may have been that they were possessed of brains, but of that I have doubts,
for Michael Heslop once told me that when he had a problem in the pit he always
went to my grandfather for advice. I have a feeling that there must have been
some schism in the past.

I once visited my grandfather some years before he died and I was chatting
with him when Harry Thompson came in with a few brown trout wrapped in a rhubarb
leaf. He suggested that I should carry them to Michael. To this I agreed.
Michael by then had left Hunwick and had settled himself and his family in a
beautiful old house that had once belonged to the owner of Quarry Burn brewery
some couple of miles on the Crook side of Hunwick. I walked to the little hamlet
which had housed most of my mother's family for many decades. Michael met me at
the door and invited me in. He and his family were charming. I still think that
my errand was contrived by the three old men.

After dinner Michael told me that my grandfather was the best mining
engineer in the family. This surprised me. He went on to tell me that he could
always depend upon him in any emergency. "Your grandfather," he said, "knew
pit work better than any man I ever knew. He was of the pit." Later he asked
me if I had ever done any timber drawing. I told him that I had been present
when timber was drawn but only in a minor capacity. "What's your seams like?" he
asked. "Six feet?" I nodded. "Any man can draw a jag in a six foot seam," he
said, "Your grandfather could draw one faultlessly in a two foot seam." He
waited until I understood. "There never were three better men than your grand-
father, Harry Thompson and Jack Coates," he almost whispered.

I knew that he was reminiscing to himself and so I waited. "Did you know... did anybody ever tell you... they were almost finished drawing when the fall came and a great stone pinned Harry down across his hips." I saw him smile, almost lovingly. "Harry beseeched them to leave him and get themselves clear, but they both stopped. They tore at that stone and got Harry free." He paused again. "They should've had a medal," he went on. "All three just got clear of the fall when she came. Nearest thing we had in Roughy to a triple tragedy. Both Harry's hips were dislocated."

Timber drawing in those days was an act of great daring. Its purpose was to ease the strains upon the more important contiguous parts of the mine. Before commencing the job of felling the standing timber all that could be salvaged had to be carried clear of the anticipated extent of the fall, things like four feet long iron rails, sleepers, unused timber, forgotten instruments of production, tram wheels, anything that might be brought into further use. This completed the drawers moved to the far end of the pre-determined fall and commenced their onslaught on the roof supports. Props that could be knocked out were summarily dealt with and thrown back and stacked. Roofing supports were of single props with a headtree, other supports, those across the subway were a single plank of wood stretched across and supported at each end with a prop, a "pair of gears" as such are called. Slowly, carefully the supports would be removed - any obdurate prop was merely cut in two by a blow of an axe - and the superincumbent area would be enlarged. Even the shattered timber was recovered, for little could be wasted in a mine.

As the area became enlarged as a result of the roof supports being removed the earth above began to whimper and then to protest. The men engaged on this task had to be able to distinguish the many voices of the roof. In the deep seams it never ceases to protest. It is most dangerous when it vociferates. Wherever it occurs there is no more awe-inspiring a task than that of timber drawing. With the continuation of felling all things assaulted moved into loud protest. This demanded a hearing, a listening and an understanding such as that demanded and experienced by the critic listening to an orchestral concert. How often, when sitting in a concert hall, have I watched the appreciative
listeners drinking and savouring the sounds of the symphony and suddenly found myself transported into the deeps and crouching alongside those magnificent interpreters of the voices of the earth as it was moving to its impending fall, watching them testing with the deepest pleasure every sound being uttered by the crunching mass as it was moving to the ultimate point of its own crashing crescendo. How attentively did those ancient miners listen for every note in the great orchestration, and calmly evaluated every sound emitted by the massive, moving, resistless, crunching power of stone as it approached the moment of its own obliterating consummation.

I have watched as I have helped at this task of easing the earth of its own pain, and I have felt humbled as I have recognised the exquisite skill and judgment and patience of those men whose duty it was to contrive a limited catastrophe. All the time they were in the presence of an awful doom, and yet they worked with grave nonchalance. At times they would whisper for silence. The word would sibilate along the passage and we would all stand hushed. A swift blow of the axe would be followed by the fall of a pair of gears. These we would scramble away. At each individual felling the fall would impend over the enlarging area of non-support. Tensely we would wait upon the final whisper: "She's coming!" We would feel the loud boom as it sank into the entrails of the earth beneath our feet, and without hurry we would slink into a safety where we could identify the more ominous growlings above us. The terror of a now loudly exostulating roof would continue until time almost failed of its gratuity. The swift move back out of danger and then the crash of the fall of the roof as it submitted itself to a chaos and a pandemonium beyond estimation. And there we would leave the disruption to continue in its own time to find its own peace, knowing as we did that the upper world, so formidable in its aloneness, resented this disembowelling and would repair it.

It was as if the upper earth had gone into a deep labour in order to produce a catastrophe, but when all was over it became obvious that only the upper folds of rock had been aborted. The fall, in most cases, was confined to the edges of the standing coal, and its further advance along the gallery was restricted by the roof supports in its path. It was always curious to note that when the fall had overlain itself in its entire mass just how dangerous
the roof had become before it was felled. And, yet, any man could cast a con-
temptuous glance at the fall when he passed by.

Coal is a tenacious mineral when it stands within its nativity. The earth
weighs upon it with the enormity of the aeons, pressing relentlessly until
the excavations are unable to forbid the consummation of marriage of the floor
and the roof. The pressures remain incessant and formidable. The nether world
protests vociferously against all the agonies it is compelled to endure. It
avows continuously its deep disapproval. One listens and one is momentarily
afraid. The seams of coal, dipping in their eternal obeisances to the rising
sun, gleam in all the light which men shine upon them. And all that is actually
happening is that coal is being mined.

It was into this world that I was born.

It was in this shadow-existence that I was to become a man, and to behave
after the manner of the men who had begotten me. I was not trapped. I was
immured, as were all my contemporaries, in a mining world that we could not
and would not change, but whose destiny it was to pass away.
My mother's maiden name was Isabel Whitfield. She was the third daughter born to Ralph Whitfield and Ann Dunwoody. Both originated in higher Weardale, of peasant stock. Ralph laboured on the fells. Ann, a big-boned wayward lass lived her own life until she met Ralph. Although she claimed a birthplace somewhere in the Pennine area, I have a conviction that she originated in some Westmoreland village. She was pregnant with Ralph's third child when they decided to make honest folk of themselves. In all, she bore Ralph six sons and three daughters, and she reared them all but one son and one daughter.

At the time when they were wedded, Ralph was employed as a navvy on the construction of the Waskerley reservoir high on the foot of the range, which was to provide the greater part of Durham county with the softest water known to northern man, so soft that it would lather at the touch of soap from the cold tap. It also granted unconquerable teeth decay to generations of "Geordies".

Ralph was encouraged by his father's eldest brother to refuse to go to the hirings and to take up navvying with him about the area. The tragedy that drove Ralph from the dales for the rest of his life occurred during the excavation of the reservoir on a day set aside for blasting. Some unfortunate giant challenged Nicholas Whitfield to a wrestling contest. Reluctant to engage himself in a contest which he knew would end unhappily, he was goaded to accept the challenge.

The episode has passed out of the memory of the folk, but in those days sixty years ago I heard it discussed in my grandfather's kitchen. Nicholas angled for and secured a positive hold on his opponent and, so the tale went, told him to fall "else he would break his back," which he did after he had swallowed his opponent's furious rebuke for making the suggestion. The deed done, he laid the giant on the grass and fled the scene. They found Nicholas'
with alarming rapidity. I followed his coffin through the deep snow of the January of 1913, some five months before we buried my mother. The Great War was little more than a year away from history.

Ann Whitfield was the most unreligious woman I have ever met. Her every spoken thought held a sexual urge. She was simply a peasant bawd in her own right. For her a dirty story or a two-edged insinuation was the joy of life, that which she treasured to the gates of her senility. I remember her face, an un kissed, unloved parchment made by the years. I remember her better when she walked abroad in black alpacas, decorated bonnet and umbrella and strong leather boots, a tall, angular person endowed with great physical strength. She rarely spoke foul language. She did not behave riotously. Under her stark exterior she hid a furious contempt of the life she had been required to live.

None of her sons treasured her. She and all her sons but Henry were content to grace a church or chapel when they had to follow a coffin there. None of them were at any time generous to us, the children of their sister. Perhaps it was their conviction that they had contributed enough to their sister's pleasure.

They did not visit our home, and we did not offer to enter any of theirs! Birthdays and festival days were not observed after the simple manner of the poor. None of us ever received a coin from any of our relations. The giving and the receiving of alms were unknown in our families.

I believe that my grandmother loved her daughter. She came to her aid in times of sickness, and she did all those domestic chores for her which she ought to have done for herself, such as simple mending, the making of shirts and underclothing, mending and repairing, doing the family wash when my mother was abed with child. In return she asked nothing, nothing, not even a simple chore.

Poor soul!

Washing the clothes was a task that required great strength in its execution in the north east. When a couple set up house there were three domestic requisites that had to be obtained for they could not be borrowed more than once, and these were a pess-tub, a pess-stick and a mangle. Today their place has been usurped by the washing machine. The pess-stick was a curiously shaped instrument made of ash. It was cut from the one piece of wood. The shank of the contraption was reduced to about three inches in diameter, and was about
Durham miners' wives, but somehow she struggled on and bore her children. After her death I once talked to my paternal grandfather about her. He assured me that she had "the Whitfield complaint," and that she could not have lived a great many years. She was not, he said, a strong specimen of the women of the coalfield.

I was born in Rough Lea on the first day of October in the year 1898. My mother gave birth to her third child, a son, late in the December of 1900. This child was furnished with the name of Hector. All, or most all, of the unfortunate males of that generation received Boer War appellation, like "Redvers", "Baden", "Buller", "Powell", some even received "Kitchener" or "Roberts". The girls did not escape, and were commissioned to carry through their lives such names as "Pretoria", "Kimberley", even "Witwater"! All this apart, the arrival of the new baby liberated me from my conscription to the yard of our miserable little home. I was allowed to play beyond the "nessy".

At the top of the street in the area beyond the colliery gate all the lime, sand and bricks necessary for building or repairing the structures above and below ground were deposited in great mounds. All this clutter formed a delectable and not forbidden playground for all the children in the hamlet. A small gauge railway for the tubs ran from the bankhead to the yard so that the materials required in the mine could be loaded and then shunted to form part of a suitable train of tubs. There is more actual building done in a mine than might be imagined. Arches have been constructed against the most menacing roofs that would have done credit to the builders of great cities. A strange world, indeed. It was more than a world of play. Couples went a-courting among the debris of that strange, unexciting world.

As I grew older this world opened for me its many dirty windows, and in some dim way I understood much that was happening. Away from the simple joys and mishaps of that stores area I ventured as I was allowed, or taken, into that part of the world where the coke ovens were made to rage in all the wonders and beatitudes of their fantastic processes. It was fascinating to watch the wagons emerging from under the hopper filled with coal and being pushed down the slope to gain speed before the drummer leaped upon it to make a safe journey over the roaring ovens. It was just a matter of exploiting the gradients on both outward and inward journeys. The lift from the end of the lower gradient.
was made by mechanical means. The truck possessed a wide mouth, from which the sides narrowed sharply to an aperture at the base which was small enough to allow the contents, small coal and coal dust, to drop into a cold oven through its upper vent. The task of the trammer was to stop his vehicle precisely above this vent. This done he pulled the lever and allowed the contents to escape. He then closed the slot of his truck and manoeuvred his machine to that point at the end of the line of ovens where he could join the gradient which would take him back to the hopper.

Each of the ovens possessed a rather large vent, like a small doorway, at the side, through which the coke could be removed. From the top of the "doorway" depended a well adjusted wheel, or rake bolt, which was unhocked and laid aside until it was time to "fell" the oven. The process was quite simple. Prior to the loading of the oven, the "doorway" was built up with blocks of concrete, or similar material, but in such a manner that air vents were left at places between the blocks. Special "oven-shutters" went the rounds closing the ovens for the next turn-over of coke. When a rank of ovens were made ready for coking they were ignited, but in what way I was never able to discover. Once on fire, nature had its will on the rejected spillage from the mine. For three days and three nights the oven blazed so riotously as to violate the atmosphere over a considerable area. At the height of the conflagration the flames leaped great distances into the air. The heat was unbearable. To stand and watch was to become mesmerised. The world appeared to have become offered in sacrifice to the production that depended upon coke and which is no longer remembered.

It was a wonderful experience watching the oven men "killing" an oven. Beyond the perforated wall across the door was a white hot mass that squirmed and heaved in dreadful beligerancy. The killers waited for the moment when they could begin operations. Stripped naked to the waist line of their trousers, they attacked first the walled doorway, wielding their sledgehammers with remarkable fluency of strokes, attacking individually in short bursts then leaping out of the clutch of the tremendous heat. After a few bursts the rampart was breached, and the debris cast out of the way with the aid of long handled shovels. Then followed the "drowning" of the coke. The water came from the colliery pond, pumped under the necessary amount of pressure. Each oven had its
own "tap", a large affair to which was attached the end of a large hose which ended in a smaller nozzle which powered a flow of water into the heart of the fiery mass. As soon as the water hit the mass of coke everything was blotted out by a scalding steam from which everybody present on the rank sought refuge in the nearby cold ovens. Like an animal held at bay the coke passed into hissing protestation.

As soon as the hissing, screaming and scorching had died down the feller and his mate hung the rake bolt on its hook, passed the rake on to the wheel and began to feel the coke. The purpose of the feverish manipulation of the rake was to find some break in the coke for the rake head so that the coke could be broken from the mass and pulled out of the oven. As the water continued to play on the coke it helped in shattering the congealed mass into manageable fragments.

Of all the laborious jobs I have come into contact with this was the most fearsome and painful. Once the contents of the ovens were brought into control the rest was labour. Soon the rake was manipulated freely and effectively and was bringing huge slabs of gleaming silver out of the fiery lair. The job of the assistant was to heave the hot stuff into a huge barrow with an enormous fork, and then trundle the barrow up the ramp over the space between the oven platform and the ten ton truck standing near it. This barrow was amazingly tall and presented various difficulties before its essential purpose could be realised. First, it was a task loading the hot coke into it, secondly it was difficult to balance it over the ramp, and thirdly a matter of some ability to tip the contents into the truck. The simple technology of those by-gone days presumed the presentation of superhuman strength in conjunction with enormous agility without the possessor being fully mindful of them.

Nothing was so beautiful for me as those silver slabs of coke being withdrawn from the screaming ovens and wheeled into the trucks. To watch the act was to glory in the beauty of endeavour and to be mindful of the travesty of its fate. It gleamed with the radiance of bright silver, too beautiful almost to touch. As it cooled and took on the further majesty of polished silver it seemed to solidify into something reaching out beyond grandeur, to purposeful human labour. Today there is no coke like that which the north eastern colli-
eries produced for the metallurgic industries, for such delicate loveliness has lapsed into an unremembered past.

As children we played many fascinating games about those dreadful ovens. We roasted potatoes and ate them down to their scorched blackness. We kept clear of the tramps who made the ovens their homes. We carried crickets home on our clothes. Their cheerful chirpings, when they were successfully lodged in some crevice in the fireplace, were always a trouble and an unhappiness to the housewives who had to live with them all day. They concocted strange brews with which to get rid of the pests, and they whipped us children for bringing them home.

I often recall with secret pleasure those early evil days. The passing of the years sweetens the distant plesaings. After all, they were years that added stature to a simple boy. There was that little locomotive that panted and struggled about the environs of the industrial complex. Were it here today it might be a treasured museum piece. The year would be 1905, and it might have been forty, nay fifty: years old. That would have taken it near to the George Stephenson era. What a task! What a doom! To push and pull thousands of tons of coal, thousands of tons of coke, massive quantities of timber, bricks, saggar clay, and beautiful earthenware into and out of that deplorably dirty area of production.

That locomotive had a brother, or a forerunner. I did not discover it, but I was convinced that it had been left there for me. It was a much simpler engine, one that had outlived the days of its usefulness, one that had been taken to some remote valley between two enormous mounds of blue shale and left there, forgotten. As the shale tips had increased great lumps of shale had rolled down the tops when the waggons were tipped and had gathered about the locomotive, gradually obliterating it. For some reason the tipping had stopped, and when I found it its fate had not been sealed. When I found it I gathered it into the keening of my childish imagination, all to myself. I made it my very own secret. Whenever I could slip away from the notice of my increasingly harassed mother I clambered over those mounds and hour after hour shared its forgotten aloneness. It was the most wonderful privilege of my young days to clamber up the iron steps into the cab. That deserted cab, with all its simple furnishings became the centre of my very own kingdom of shale.
The simple mechanisms had been left intact. The water gauge still functioned, and the firedoor opened and shut. The starting handle I could not move no matter how I tried. The whistle had long been dead. The windows were intact, and through them I peered into a vast world that existed far beyond the shale rubble that lay decomposing in the air. How many thousands of miles we journeyed into the kingdom of a child's imagination it would be difficult to assess.

What became of my locomotive I do not know. I did not outgrow my passion for it. When I went to school I still found time to visit my immobile engine. When my father was promoted and we moved to High Grange I went to say goodbye, and there I left it to all the ravages of time, shale tipping and rust.

All these years my mother provided the family comfort and my father reproved his children after the manner of the sons of the north country. Their's was a unity without love. It was always his duty and his pleasure to thrash us, and as the years passed his thrashings became more and more explosive. Often they were without the savour of mercy, and then my mother intervened. There was that sorry day when he discovered that my eldest brother had played truant from school. That thrashing was so compulsive that my mother had to throw herself upon her child to prevent further ill being done. None of us played truant after that. That good hiding became a family remembrance. Being a most perceptive man, my father was capable of recognising other men's evils; being a deeply religious man he was capable of inflicting merciless punishment. His appreciation of wrong doing was meticulous. There was that occasion when, as a small child, I became restless in chapel on a torrid afternoon during an interminable sermon. My father informed me when we got outside that he would thrash me when we got home. I walked home with him in a fever of apprehension. When we reached home he told me to go into the front room and take my trousers down.

"What has he done?" my mother asked, fearfully. She was then far gone with her fourth child.

"He's been a bad lad in chapel," he informed her.

"Don't be too rough with him, Bill," she pleaded. "He's only a bairn."

"He's got to learn," he said.

He followed me into the front room, taking the strap with him. Every family possessed a strap, a thong of leather with many ends. Without a word he began whipping me across my bare buttocks. From then, until my mother interfered
My brother George and I were obliged to attend chapel three times every sabbath, whatever the weather, and without let-up or hindrance. Real illness was the only excuse for non-attendance. When we moved from Rough Lee to High Ormange on the appointment of my father to an official capacity in North Bitchburn Colliery, the stringency of chapel attendance was not relaxed although the distance from our new home to Hunwick chapel was considerably increased. The morning service was devoted to Sunday school, and the other two meetings to the rapping in the pulpit which continued on each occasion well into the second hour. The final hymn of the evening service was not the last meeting of the day. There was always the prayer meeting.

George and I were not introduced to the prayer meeting until after we had got settled into our new home. We both found it interesting to watch the congregation pass out of the chapel and go about its own several businesses, and to experience the fading of the hymn into an unaccompanied chant as the preacher closed the "great book" and placed the hymn book gently on top of it, creep out of the pulpit, down the four steps, hold on to the newel post as he passed into the carpeted area in which stood the communion table.

For me, a young child, it was always an experience tinged with awe. All those who had chosen "to stay behind" sank upon their knees and waited for the preacher to utter the injunction: "Let us all pray". They all waited until John Neslop, the organist, had closed the organ and taken his departure from the organ loft, crept down the stairs and joined the little band of supplicators. Invariably it was Sandy Metcalf, the choir master, who broke into the first lamentation, prefaced by a statement of general approval of what the
preacher had said "from Thy holy book, Lord." Hazlitt has it in one of his essays that "the popular preacher made less frequent mention of heaven than of hell". Now that I come to recall them, those prayers were complemental to the sermon and the strophes that had been laid upon the beseechings and namings of the punishments that had been defined. It was the opportunity for those simple worshippers to lay their implorings at the foot of the throne. Whenever an opposite point was made in a prayer loud "Amens" and "Hosannas" escaped from the dejected bowels of those faithful. My grandfather generally followed Sandy, and after him my father would raise his own voice. Grandfather prayed passionately, ravenously, exposing his own goodnesses and his own good behaviour as acts worthy of condemnation rather than condonement. "Thy Book, Oh Lord" was always dressed in inverted commas and deeply underlined and sprinkled with star dust. Simple words were offered in complex sentences. Incoherence was always overlooked by a loud "Hear him, Lord". My father prayed gently, subjectively, and not straight into the ear of the Lord God, for he was sure that He would recognise the finest of his thoughts, the gentleness of his impeachments and the softness of his approvals as coming straight out of the pages of the Hibbert Journal. He did not offer himself as a theologian, but as one who had accepted guidance and now anticipated encouragement. But the high spot was grandmother Neslop.

St. Paul has it most succinctly that "a woman keep silence in the churches, for it is not permitted unto them to speak" because "it is a shame to speak in the church." Had St. Paul known my grandmother he might not have included that stricture in his law, for not only did she speak in church, she applauded and she denounced whenever she thought she ought to do so. And she did it with a well directed ejaculation. Woe to any preacher who "tampered with the Word" in her presence. She reserved her denunciations, her condemnations and her approvals for the prayer meeting. She did not rant, nor did she rave. She pleaded and supplicated and she whispered. I can see her now, a little, frail woman, a leaf on the bough of Methodism, not five feet high, not seven stones in weight, a thin, time-worn little creature, dressed in black, buttoned to the ears, and bonneted like a flower, a bonnet like a black halo with a thin white spray that danced to every movement of her head.

She was a border woman who had moved south with her family from a nestling hamlet tucked somewhere among the Cheviots to the Tyneside and then to
Newcastle. Often did I sit sharing her lonely company and listening to her tales of her early life. Her speech in conversation was as soft and limpid as a clear stream. It was that of high Northumberland wherein the sibilant stress nursed the consonants into sweet accompaniment with the softly uttered vowels, at all times musical. "Munna rive your meat, laddie," she would adjure me. "Give it aal a fine chew wi' your teeth. Niver fratch wi' your teeth. Chew, laddie, chew an' grow into a fine man." So lovely a cadence, pure and radiant, as when the violin rises in the melody and sweetens the playing into soft gentling of tone. I never heard speech like her's until I listened to Tom Burt, the first working man to be elected to parliament. 

She told me her tales of her early days, "when we lassies what worked at Haggie's proud works, had to cross the Tyne by the steppy stones." She told me of the great comet that "meant to son'd the sea dry, if the Lord had let it." Often she breathed a comforting mass for the souls "o' them canny men an' bairns that perished in Hartley pit." She was not always gentle, but even when she spoke in anger it was marvellous to listen to her. Her frail body had borne my grandfather eleven bairns, eight daughters and three sons, "arl o' whom but two, a frail laddie and poor wee lassie, I reared." Grandfather was dead and buried when she confessed to me: "I always felt sorry for my man, your grandfather. He was a proud an' forgiving man in all things, but there was one thing that allus grieved him, and what he niver got over. He was grandfather to a vast load o' children that were the bairns of other men's sons." She shook her little head over her memories. "A great punishment that, laddie," she whispered to me. "I often sits an' wonders why."

Today, some forty years after her death, I think I am beginning to understand her. She was, undoubtedly, of a tempestuous nature, yet she was a little old dear who had a passion for flowers, especially nasturtiums, which she grew from a tub standing in the backyard of her home. "They're so good," she said to me as I watched her tend them, "if I just dropped them on the cement they would still find root. They're so thankful for life." And sparrows. She was kin to every one that chirped in her yard, on speaking terms with them all.

But in the prayer meeting she was not even afraid of the Lord. She always had something to reveal to Him, often cajoled him. Sometimes she came near to
pipe. What fascinated me most was the ability of each man to spit across the hearth into the heart of the fire. None of them ever stirred from his chair in order to do so. Michael Heslop was the best spitter of the three, and, I should think, the best spitter in the coal field. He could and did spit clean through the space of the handle of the kettle as it stood on the hob. His was a perfect aim, through his almost closed teeth, and his was the perfect accomplishment. My father was less gifted in the art, if art it was, but he was by no means unaccomplished. Grandfather was a quieter smoker and spat less frequently.

In those days smoking was permitted in the mines in south west Durham, for they were not bone dry. As a matter of fact pumping was the main subordinate occupation in the production of coal in that area. Being so wet, the coal dust was more coagulated and less volatile. Explosions in that part of the county were rare occurrences, nevertheless there was an instinctive fear abroad throughout the country that stemmed from the presence of large accumulations of coal dust. Away back on June 25th, 1845, Michael Faraday, drawing on his experiences in Haswell Colliery the year before, had declared at a public lecture in London that "explosions are not simply the effects arising from the mixture of gases, but from the combustion of the coal-dust and the coal-gas which the first explosion made", but this had not yet seeped into the minds of mining technicians. Time was still on the side of Faraday.

All coal mines and, indeed, all ironstone mines, produce the deadly firedamp. The ignition of an accumulation of this gas produces a flash of fire, which, under given circumstances, flies forward against the incoming fresh air. Any coal dust lying in the track of the fire is raised into a cloud and feeds the gathering force of the conflagration. Momentarily a massive explosion sweeps forward along the intake with unimaginable force. Nothing under the earth within the compass of man's explorations is so destructive as a coal-gas explosion.

I have witnessed a pocket of firedamp deliberately exploded in order to "get it out of the way". This was in the Newby ironstone mine. I actually saw Dick Atkinson, the deputy, crawl into the place with a lighted candle fixed to a long pole. The result of the ignition of the gas was negative. It was just a loud bang and a sheet of flame. There was no combustible - as the miners call it - lying about to sustain the explosion.
When Michael Heslop called on a Sunday evening to chat with my grandparents they did not discuss religion. When the men started to talk she invariably flung her white linen apron over her face and rocked herself in her chair. At times she would whisper her pity whenever the discussion turned on accident or tragedy. Within her vast illiteracy crouched a knowing and understanding creature, who brimmed with pity and who drew into her memory much that passed those of the others as of little importance. Religion bothered every one of them. Over the years that have passed and carried them all into oblivion I have often pondered on why they were all such willing burden-bearers of the Lord God. My grandmother not only offered pity and comfort to all sufferers, she granted tentative absolution to the smaller sinners. My grandfather was the great decision maker in the world of the suffering and cheerlessness in which he lived, but his was a more abstract, more reflective. He found the note on which to begin the hymn at every funeral in the village. He never stormed the pulpit, and very rarely did he address the Sunday School.

My father was a lay preacher on the plan of the Bishop Auckland circuit. His services were sought over a large area, even into upper Weardale and as far afield as Teesdale. An argumentative man at all times, he could cause an uproar at "Quarter Day" of the circuit, and at the half-yearly meeting of the Cooperative Society. It was strange that he never understood that his outrageous acts at such meetings, and his declamations from the many pulpits, would be received with scant pleasure by the men who employed him. He devoured the Hibbert Journal to the end of his life. I have often wondered if he was ever impressed by any of the theologians he found between those green covers. Personally, I always found them singularly pretentious, although sensibly tensioned, upon the assumption rather than the fact, and I am painfully mindful of a criticism by Marx of Hegel's ability to turn his predicates into subjects and elevate a chance historical act into a test for ultimate reality. Being a mining engineer, my father dealt most of his time with realities and yet was able to accept as facts arguments that were not even real when they came to him from outside his own experience and work.

I do not remember any of his sermons, nor how he graced the pulpit, for I was expelled from his home long before I was able to offer a judgment. He was not a perceptive politician. When he did accept Michael Heslop's advice to
We were still living in Rough Lea when the Balfour administration handed over to Campbell-Bannerman without taking the trouble to seek the suffrages of the electorate. By that time I had passed out of the primary school along to the "big" school by the church. There I was coping steadily with my slate and pencil. All written work was done on slates, for our school life was not so very distant from the start of the elementary school system. The authorities had no idea, outside that of stark economy, of furnishing the schools. We sat on long forms, eight or ten children to the form. We each had an inkwell hole, but we had no inkwells. We cleaned our slates with spit and our jacket sleeves. We had no rulers. It was education on the cheap.

The day the voting took place in the Bishop Auckland division the little school had a holiday. As soon as we were set free from our school I made my way to the other school just to see what there was to see. I was soon deeply interested in the process. I stood in the porch to watch and wait for anybody I knew who might take me in. I was most impressed by the policeman who seemed to have nothing to do but stand about.

The Bishop Auckland constituency was a foregone Liberal seat. It remained so until 1918. The sitting member was James Paulton, who had represented the division since its enfranchisement away back in the 'eighties. Paulton was in the booth when my grandfather arrived to cast his vote. When Paulton emerged my father's father was deep in his interrogation of myself. He became highly
amused. He came out just when I had told the old man I had not been home for my tea.

"Then thou'rt a bad lad, ye' said my grandfather. "Your mother'll be worries-
ing, won't she?

"Who is the bairn, George?" the candidate asked.

"It's our Bill's lad," he replied. "Lives down at Roughley. He hasn't been home for his tea."

"Perhaps he's interested, George," Paulton suggested.

"Interested! What right has he to be interested. He wants his backside smacked for not going home."

"It'll do the lad no harm," George," said Paulton. "Why don't you take him in and let him see how it's done?" He bent down and chucked me under the chin.

"Goodbye, my boy," he said.

My grandfather did not take me into the booth with him. As soon as Paulton was gone he marched me to the gate and ordered me "off home". In the distance I could see my father. There was no need to tell me what to do.

Soon after that my father received his appointment at North Bitchburn colliery, and in time a farmer arrived at our door with his dray and a lad. With the help of the villagers they dismantled our home and packed it on the waggon. They found a place for the mangle, pot, tub, garden spade, bed, everything but the clock and took it away to High Orange. My brother had to carry the clock, and a grievous burden he found it to be.

All this meant a change in our lives, but no change in our way of life. The colliery lay about a mile distant from the village, at the bottom of a steep hill. It was a replica of Rough Lea, a drift haulage, a large bank of coke ovens and an extensive brickyard. It polluted the atmosphere of Howden-le-Wear. High Orange was no better and no worse a village conception than any other village in the county. It lay exactly three miles from Bishop Auckland. The original frontage, which had been a bit of speculative ribbon development, hid the three rows of houses which ran at right angles to it towards the foot of Orange Bank. Except that it was unpaved, it was fairly livable as a village.

Most of the miners were housed in North Bitchburn village, a collection of the most deplorable houses imaginable set on the brow of the hill that
saw all that was to be seen of the fearful complex below and which accepted
the smut and fumes and the roaring flames of the vast coking plant. North Bitch-
burn was the undetectable village.

There was a post office and general stores at the end of the frontage in
High Ornage. Next to it was a large house which was occupied by the clerk to
the Bishop Auckland bench of magistrates, which was overlooked and over-ruled
by Sir William Eden, Bart., the father of a son who eventually became Prime
Minister and an earl, Anthony Eden.

At the top of the street was the school, which served the needs of the
children of North Bitchburn, High Ornage, Quarry Burn and the odd farms in be-
tween. The school was presided over by Charles Leonard Davies, B. Litt, the
cruelest punisher of a delinquent child I have ever met. A sadist, if ever
there was one. To see him stroke his cane before administering savage punish-
ment of a male malefactor was to see the ultimate in disregard of childish
suffering.

High Ornage had its own advantages. It was a haven in a world devoted to
coal production. It stood on a ledge of a steep hill where it could look out
towards the distant Pennines. From the top of Ornage Bank, upon which was
built a reservoir for servicing the habitations below with fresh water, one
could on a clear day mark the march of the Pennine range from the glimmerings
which broke over the Tees, then gently undulating and forever rising to parade
on its lovely way into the mountains and then to dip into the lowliness of the
distant Tyne country, beautiful beyond belief, wrapped eternally in a radiance
that is ever ethereal to men.

The railway which had been laid from Darlington to Tow Law had branched
off at a point half a mile distant from High Ornage to enable a subsidiary line
to climb the valley of the Wear as far as Wearhead. Wear Valley Junction
served the villages and hamlets around. In the past the railway had had to be tr,
tressed from the old iron works at Wotton Park in order to carry the line over
the bed of the river. This had long been filled in with cinders and rubble. It
stood like a rampart across the valley, but somehow it did not spoil the view.
Over the road from High Ornage to Wotton-le-Wear had been constructed a tremen-
rously high brick arched bridge. On the top of this bridge stood the station.
Our house was no better than any of the houses in the village, but, being the bottom house in Pipe Row, it had an incomparable view of the valley. The windows had been inserted in the gable, and so the view was our own. At any time of the day the mountains could be caught clinging to the shoulder of England. It was a vista to delight the lowliest heart, not because it was there, but simply because industry had not as yet laid its unclean paws on field, fold or fell that stayed as they had always stayed long before Bede had lain down his pen. Before coal was spaded out of the earth of Durham the country must have been wonderful to gaze upon. In my early youth the country which had escaped molestation still lay in the gift of beauty. The wooded uplands rose gently out of a benediction breathed upon it from untroubled skies. Only the smoke of a solitary railway engine fluttered upwards as if afraid. From the bedroom window on a bright morning, and there were many bright mornings, I would look out upon it all, unaware that I would not find an excess of peace and stillness elsewhere in my wanderings. The valley cleaved gently to the remote fanes of the land and the mountains stood steadfast as they held up the white clouds above the deep purple of the heather cladding their slopes.

It was a glorious place to arrive at, for there was always the beckoning, if not the promise of fulfilment. It was somewhere in that valley where my mother had been born, in Wolsingham, a village that remains what it must have been when she was a child playing in its streets more than a century ago.

I recall that day she and I, and the newborn fourth son in the perambulator, making a journey to Witton-le-Wear. The sun was warm as we walked along the road above the willow land that touches the river with a green gentleness. We got as far as the saw mill, but instead of walking on into the village she left the road by a path which edged the river along its pebbled reach. All was quiet and lonely. We walked until we came upon a fallen trunk, and there we sat down so that she could suckle the child. When he was sated she put him back into his sleep and then she began to weep. She wept silently into an uncontrolled sobbing as I sat beside her, wondering. If she had had tears to spare against her lot she must have shed them long ago. When she grew composed she rose, turned the pram round, and smiled at me.

"We'll go home now," she said.

I expostulated, but she merely smiled my anger away. "I cannot go on,"
eager scholars from the Primitive Methodist enclave went to South Shields. Both my parents preferred the trio to that port. There was a long pier to walk along and plenty of places upon which to rest. Mother liked to rest on the pier. Father went in search of a healthy salmon roe. He knew the best shop where the roe was sold under the counter. Salmon roe made an excellent bait for trout, but it possessed the disadvantage that it was forbidden by the river authorities, whose bailiffs kept a strict watch on its being used. Neither my father nor my grandfather felt any compunction when they set about preparing the bait. The skinning of the eggs and the subsequent treatment which turned the roe into a thick paste which could be fixed to the hook were all done a worm was a hush-hush job. Small jars of paste were passed among the fishers in a secrecy that would have done any spy proud. Where it was secreted on the person of the fisherman was a mystery to me. After a storm the catches of brown trout were sometimes remarkable.

The river flowed placidly once it had passed the Witton-le-Year reaches. The flat country from Witton Park bridges to beyond Escombe, an old village which still treasures its most ancient church, was the happy ground for the delivery of the roe to the fish. Witton Park was the one bleak spot on the river’s course, and one over which a straying bailiff would avoid whenever possible. Once there had been a considerable ironworks close to the river. An iron bridge carried the road over the river under the span of the bridge which carried the railway line northwards.

It was this very iron works which cradled the movement which sent England scampering into the industrial age. The Pease family were the chief sponsors as well as the greatest beneficiaries of the movement. It was they who entertained George Stephenson when he came south from the Tyne to Darlington to discuss the project of a railway which would run from the ironworks at Witton Park to the nearest port, Stockton-on-Tees. The railway was to be an open-ended affair, which was to take into its care the carrying of ironstone from the coast and the Cleveland deposits to the furnaces and the finished goods to the coast. The resulting birth of the railway system made it possible for the capitalist mode of production to break its fetters and expand over the face of the earth.
new process. The silver departed from the coke. Gone were the men who felled the beehive ovens. Coke was expelled from the ovens by a mechanical rammer and left to cool while the oven was loaded for the next turn-over of production. All that was of little use, all the deadly poisonous waste, was sluiced into the nearest brook and left to find its way to the sea. The puss from the new method managed to pollute the lovely river Wear in a very short time, all the way from a mile below Witton Park Bridge. The poison swirled and killed all aquatic life in all the waters that roved by the ancient castles and the cathedral right to Wearmouth.

In little more than a year there was no fishing for anybody, yet no voice denounced, and no hand was raised against, a savage pollution which became total. New coking complexes were organised over the coal field. The river died. Not a child paddled. No one bathed. No fish swam. Years later the higher reaches of the river were stocked with young trout, but all the simple pleasures had passed out of those waters.

It is admitted that the coal industry has contributed its portion to the pollution of the north country, but it ought to be remembered that even in the days of its worst excesses it did not lay hands upon the foundations of the churches and the noble buildings. Indeed, it left them unmolested.

Unbridled pollution of the atmosphere, the land and the rivers continued until the coalfield began to die. The shallow seams of the west were abandoned, and even the coking industry began to decay. The deep-mined coal in the east was found to be unsuitable for coking. So death laid its hand upon those areas where industry had been born. As the paralysis crept across the county it stamped the coking industry into decrepitude. Mining was driven under the sea. The river was left to the winds and the rains, and the snows of the fells. Of late the fish have begun to venture up the waterway to revisit their ancient places under the jutting stones, the shadows over the rippling water runs, and the roots of ancient willows. One day, perhaps, the river will recover most of its lost joys and there may be the whispering of the long forgotten songs. Perhaps, the birds will not fear to drink at the edges of the deep pools.
Sometimes I wonder if the peewits have come back and are at their old shrill sweepings of the pastures, and screaming over the fields along by the river, breeding after the manner of their kind, and holding court with the deepening dark. They still guide their young along the escape routes from the north's savage winters, for I go to watch them in a field near my home taking their pause before continuing on their inward and their outward journeys. I rest content to leave them all my envies and my memories of their freedoms and the departures which the north holds for me.

Apart from being fishermen, they were all politicians in those days in the Bishop Auckland area. Away in the seventies, the men of Morpeth elected Tom Burt to parliament, but it took the men of Durham a long time to change over from Liberalism to labour. When they did make a break-through they found men of deep Liberal persuasion to represent them. Bishop Auckland remained Liberal until 1918.

High Grange was in the Bishop Auckland constituency. Howden-le-Wear, a mile away, was in the Barnard Castle constituency. In the year 1910 there were two general elections, and in both of them Arthur Henderson kept the seat he had won in 1906. I remember both elections vividly. We were, as a family, part of the make-up of the village by that time. In both elections, a most respected leader of the miners, William House, contested the constituency as the Labour Candidate. He lost on both occasions to the Liberal.

My father was a keen asker of questions at the hustings. In the second election of that year, 1910, he asked me to accompany him to Howden in order to hear Henderson. There was only one large hall in the village, and on that night both Henderson and his Tory opponent had agreed to address the meeting in turn. The hall was crowded to the doors when we arrived, but somehow we got in. First snow went to the Tory, and the first thing he did was to write on a conveniently placed blackboard the result of the Woolwich election in which
Will Crooks had been defeated. Parliamentary elections at that time continued over a considerable period; indeed, some results were known before the nomination of candidates had taken place in other constituencies. It was once the privilege of Winston Churchill to state publicly that he regretted the law which had changed the old practice of elections on the grounds that unfought constituencies could repair the mistakes of those constituencies which had erred.

After the Tory meeting had ended and the candidate and his wife had departed, the meeting fell into some repose until Arthur Henderson and his wife appeared. He was a tall, angular man in those days. He had to fight down the enthusiastic hubbub before he could make himself heard. That he succeeded need not be insisted, but I have no recollection of his speech. The meeting over, we walked homewards by the side of my father. It was a dark night. The ovens beyond the colliery were blazing like some superb hell. Everything was still. It was a hushed northern night that lifted itself up and beyond the stars.

A miner walking on a head allowed us to get alongside of him before he spoke. "Seed you at the meeting, Bill," he said. "I think the Tory'll get beat, but he'll take a lot o' votes off Henderson."

"I think you're right, Joe," said my father. "You know who you're voting for?"

"Nacherally," said Joe. "Folks the likes o' me dinna live in Witton Castle like the Tory. That leaves Henderson."

"I suppose it does," my father agreed.

Arthur Henderson kept the seat until 1918, when, for reasons known only to himself, he left Barnard Castle to fight a London constituency, which he lost. For years after he passed like Ishmael through the constituencies in England, losing seats at general elections and winning by-elections. A miner, Jack Swan, took over Barnard Castle. Bishop Auckland cast out the Liberal in that year and returned Ben. C. Spoor, the son of James Spoor, a business man. Both father and son were preachers on the Primitive Methodist circuit, but old J.J. was regarded as the better preacher.

J.J. stuck "to the Book", but Ben was enamoured of the New Theology, much to the affrighted disgust of my grandparents. How the old couple fought against
so outrageous a tampering with the "old book"! Grandfather could find it in his heart to overlook the theological delinquency, and grandmother was able to bide her time.

And it came in the summer of the year 1919. She was marching down Newgate Street when she met the newly appointed Labour Agent. He held out his hand to her.

"I'm so glad to meet you Mrs Heslop," he cried. "Ben was only speaking about you the last time he was home. He particularly requested me to offer you his kindest regards if ever I should meet you. And this I do now, Mrs Heslop."

"Did he the noo!" she cooed. "An' isn't it fine he should remember an auld body like me?"

"But he does," he insisted. "Why should he forget old friends now that he is in parliament? He is away a lot, you know, carrying out his duties to the people. I'll tell him I met you."

She crumped up her frail body and smiled at him. "Aye'." she assented. "Ye do that, my canny man. Just ye do that. It's nice to be a mighty man o' valour, isn't it?"

"What do you mean, Mrs Heslop?" the poor man asked.

"Why, nice to be the captain o' the host," she replied. "Like Nahasmen, ye ken? Him in the Bible. Ye knaa..."

"But.....but, Mrs Heslop...I don't get the inference...."

She smiled at his discomfiture. "Ye forget the auld book," she reminded him. "Ye remember Nahasmen, surely.....him that was a leper."

It has been one of my pleasures to remember that little, old lady, her umbrella clutched across her breast by both arms, a little woman well in advance of the van of the Lord God of Hosts. She denounced all those who sought to lay hands upon the Bible, of which she could not read a word.

Grandfather became grave when she reported her conversation to him.

"It wasn't so wise to say a thing like that to the poor man, Mar'get," he pointed out. "You didn't brawl?"

"I just said it an' walked away," she assured him. Then she stamped her foot. She always stamped her foot when she was annoyed. "Must one not defend the Word, George?" she cried out. "Must one stay silent when men commit sin in
"A man can be forgiven," he reminded her.

"Forgiven? Forgiven, George!" she cried out. "For shame! He is beyond forgiveness."

"But, Mar'get...."

"No, George! No!" she cried out. "They that take the work o' the Lord into argument, take His word in vain." She raised her thin arm and shook her fist. "God will not be mocked, George," she assured him. "You Ben Spoor! Hoots!"

Margaret Heslop was the daughter of a borderer, called Tom Glenwright. As his family had increased he had moved towards Newcastle, seeking work. He ended up in a small downstairs flat in George Potts Street, Westoe, South Shields, and there he eked out a livelihood as a donkeyman at the Mill Dam glass works. He was not a religious man. His family was born, and both sexes, six daughters and two sons moved over the north in their own right to work and eat. I was surprised when my father and I were walking in the Westoe area to learn that he knew the area. He was attending the synod of his church in the town of South Shields. I was taking him to my lodgings for tea. As we walked along George Potts Street he stopped at a door.

"Aye," he said. "This is the very house."

I waited.

I used to come her to stay with my grandfather Glenwright," he explained. "The last time I was here was to go to his funeral. He had his head cut off."

"Cut off!" I cried. "What do you mean?"

"Surprises you, eh?" he challenged. "It's true, though. You see he was minding an engine at the glass works. It was a cold night. His muffer got tangled up in the cogs as he was giving them a drop of oil. When they found him the engine was still running and he was without his head. What is a donkey engine?" he asked.

Life at High Orange was not unpleasant. There our family was increased to five boys. Grandmother Whitfield was not highly excited about the fecundity of her daughter, but, being a wise woman, she did not expostulate in the presence of my father. It was a bitterly cold night early in January when my third brother was born. Around that period there had been an unusually heavy fall of snow. All the country around was covered with a deep layer. Orange bank was
made impassable by the drifting so deep that it lingered against the hedges well into May.

In that January of 1907 a great comet blazed across the sky. A tremendously long tail of brilliance spread away from a single star. Nothing so spectacular had ever occurred in our experience as that wonderful thing in the sky. It was as if that star had been disembowelled and was fleeing from its own catastrophe. In the day time it was visible, without its spectacular brilliance. When night came all its magnificent diamonds were set ablaze and the heavens held a delirium of light. To us it appeared stationary, even though it was moving away from earth at an incredible speed. When at last it faded away the sky seemed to be lonely, as if something had been snatched from its reach.

I was too young to pay more than passing heed to any of the discussions on the strange phenomenon. The old men and women were filled with apprehension. My grandmother remembered for me the last one. The argument died away as soon as the comet had gone away.

We were an average family, my parents and my three brothers. (Tom had not by then put in an appearance, but this he did in May of 1910) Life went on without deep incident. My father went daily to the mine. Returning home, he washed his body in front of the kitchen fire, and, when it was possible, went along to Howden to gossip with Walter Hook, his brother in law, or to some chapel meeting or service at Hunwick. During the season he fished the Wear.

As boys we attended the council school at the top of the street, and we suffered the stinging slashes of the cane of the master. We rarely complained to our parents. We wept over our sore hands, and the class took as little notice of our grief as we took of the grief of other children. And there was plenty of grief to go round, for none escaped the righteous and dutiful anger of Charles Leonard Davies, B. Litt. His was the epitome of cruel punishment by the slash. And yet he thumped the permitted lessons into our heads. It is possible for me to look back and sympathise with him in the task he had undertaken. What became of him I do not know. In some ways he was a gifted man. Whatever knowledge I came to possess passed over the beginnings inoculated by him. He was the only headmaster but one I had.

In the year 1911 the miners came out on strike. My father being an official
at North Bitchburn had to perform some of the important duties while the strike lasted. As the struggle was not expected to be protracted the management had decided to keep the ponies underground. This meant that the ventilatory tract had to be examined, and the air flow kept more or less constant. The rotary fan by which the working tract was ventilated had been shut down and recourse had had to be taken to bring the old fashioned furnace ventilation back into use. This was in actuality a huge fire near the foot of the ventilation shaft through which the fan drew the air. Part of the duties of the officials was to stoke and refresh this furnace.

It was one Saturday afternoon that I went along to the pit bank to meet my father. He was waiting for me near the drift mouth when I arrived, and without more ado he instructed me to follow him. I was not given a lamp, and I was told that there was only need for one, seeing that we were not going far. I kept close to him, sharing the dim light, as he led the way down a longish wet drift, which, as it lengthened, gradually discarded any semblance of tidiness. Soon the brick arch of the cavern was left behind us, and before long I found myself stumbling after my guide along a fairly low passage which seemed to be plentifully supported at either side with timber. What I could see of the roof appeared to be of a bluish white colour.

My father was a swift traveller underground; in fact, I do not recall any man or boy who could travel faster in a crouched position. He was a man of small stature, and yet he could stride, bent low almost to an obliusness, from sleeper to sleeper without trouble along any distance of track. When it is recalled that the distance between the sleepers was four feet it can be assumed that his walk was more of a lowly leap from sleeper to sleeper rather than a stepping forward. As for myself I was not able to step in such a manner all the time I worked below ground. We came at length to a wooden door that was set in a brick wall. This he pushed open and when I had passed through he closed it carefully. A little later we came into the furnace cavern.

The ancient bricklayers who had arched the cavern and created the fire hole and the fire arrangement had been meticulous craftsmen. There could have been no better walling to support so beautiful an arch in the upper world. Across the cavern were laid the great bars upon which the fire rested, a slow
blaze of coal. Hanging his lamp on a nail he took up a long slicing bar and began to disturb the embers. Soon he had invigorated the fire, and when he was satisfied he laid on a large supply of coal. As the flame grew and the heat intensified the air began to stir about us perceptively. Before we left the wind was moving at a good speed.

"Isn't this all dangerous?" I asked.

He grinned at me, "It might've been if I hadn't shut that door," he said.

"But why a fire?" I asked.

"It's the only way we can ventilate the pit," he explained. "We'll have to carry on this way while the strike lasts. It wouldn't do to stop the ventilation. You need fresh air in a pit."

Squatting on his unkempt and lighting his pipe he gave me quite a little lecture that afternoon. He explained how before the invention of the rotary fan the mines were all ventilated by furnace draught. "You see," he began, "beyond the furnace there is a shaft which runs up to the surface. You've seen that big wheel going round just beyond the pit pond?" He waited until I had nodded.

"Well, that wheel draws the air up that shaft. Now it isn't working, so we have got to keep this fire going. How does the fire shift the air? It heats the column of air in the shaft and this causes it to rise. When this is done air from this side of the furnace fills up the gap and passes on into the upper atmosphere. And so it goes on."

"But how does the cold air get into the pit?" I asked.

"Through the other drift, the one we draw the coal out of," he explained. "But don't think that we allow it to come straight in here, my lad. We make it go all round the workings before we let it go free up the shaft here. We give it a circulatory movement. See?"

He took a piece of chalk out of one of his pockets, and then he invited me to come closer to the box, "the kist", he called it, against which he stood. He commenced to draw lines on the lid of the kist. "This is a plan of the pit," he said. "Here is the drift where the air comes in, and here is the place where you and I are now. They are not far apart, as you can guess. But before the air gets from that point to this point we make it travel."

"But how?" I asked.
A flame shot up from the furnace and revealed to me the grin on his face. "Thou'1l niver know what clever lads us miners is," he said. He laughed at his own Durham witticism, and became serious. "We don't allow the air to escape on its way in," he said, "and it has no way to escape on its way out except up the shaft. What we do is we stop up all escape routes on the way inbye. As a matter of fact we call them stoppings. Any place leading away from the in-take is stopped up, built up with bricks and cemented. We control the air. Over the years we have mined coal this has been our main problem. We have to get the fresh air into the workings, give each man his share of it, and get it back up the shaft here. Getting the air in is the most difficult job. It means employing lots of bricks and mortar, lots of timber and doors, and a tremendous amount of brattice cloth."

"Brattice cloth?"

"Aye. That's a lump lying there."

I examined the stuff and found it to be thick, almost unworkable, tarred hempen weave. "How do you hang it?" I asked him.

He laughed again. "We nail it to props and planks," he explained. "It is a tetchy job. You can lose a lot of skin off your hands doing it. We have to split a going so that the air can go up one side, into the man, and then outside into the next place. You might call the job curtaining. " He paused. "Curtaining' he reflected. "I hadn't though o' that." He stood up "We must go now to the galloways. How-way!"

We left the furnace blazing merrily, closed the door after us, and made our way to the stables. As soon as the ponies, or galloways as they were called, became aware of our approaching light they began to stamp and scream.

This was the most impressive sight I had so far seen in all the years of my young life, impressive because of many things, chiefly its squalidity. As I entered the place my eyes began to smart on account of the strong admixture of foul air and ammonia. The place which housed the undersized ponies was simply an enlargement of one of the passages that had once been hewn, dirty, bible-black as the poet would have it, without light, an area of underground cruelty. Just the bare walls of the mine. The stalls in which the animals stood were simple and economic in their transgression of pity, a wooden manger, a
halter, adequate roof support and a running prop to divide one stall from the
other. The bare rock of the floor, dunged into a cak of discomfort was all the
resting place granted to these creatures condemned as they were to so outrageous
an existence. On the wall behind each animal hung the leather trappings along
with the exaggerated skull-cap which offered some protection in the low places
through which they dragged the tubs or wagons. The poor, defeated playthings
of the winds and the heathers had been taught to attune themselves to an awful
existence.

The far end of the stables was the coal face. A hole at right angles per-
mitted a vent through which the supersaturated air could pass. The heat of the
bodies of the animals had raised the temperature considerably, uncomfortably
for humans. The dung and urine recently excreted smelt horribly. There was
the constant squeal of rats to be heard among the noises of clamping hooves. I
do not think even now that there had been, or ever could be, larger and more
sophisticated rats anywhere else in the world. They slunk out of our way,
bellies to the ground, without hurry.

The first duty was to water each pony. In turn we took them to the trough,
where they sank their heads deep into the water, almost to their eyes, in order
to drink beneath the thick coating of dust that lay upon it. It was a slow and
tedious job watering all those thirsty animals. While I watered the ponies he
set about filling the mangers with choppy from a tub.

"Cerrout! Cerrout! You brutes!" he shouted at some half dozen of the ani-
mals that had lingered too long in the choppy tub. They went at the behest of
a shovel. Choppy was the standard mixture of hay, straw, oats and beans, used
all over the coalfield. All the mass was passed through a chopper before being
loaded into a choppy tub. A quantity of the stuff was put into each manger,
which the pony shared with the rats. Since the miners had withdrawn their
labour the rats which had contrived to live on the food they could steal from
the hewers and putters and the choppy in the mangers where the animals worked
had migrated to the stables. The problem of feeding the ponies was intensified.

I watched my father fodder the ponies with eyes that brimmed with tears. I
cried when he was kind to a rather small pony. "This is Tip," he said. "We've
got to be careful with Tip. We try to see that he never comes to harm." He
patted the little thing on its neck. "He gets all the canny work, you see," he went on. "He's never seen the daylight. See how he shoves his head into the water! He knows a thing or two, does Tip. Why, Harold, thou's crying!"

Later, when he had finished the task of replenishing the ponies, he went to Tip's stall, and there, to my surprise, he brushed out the stall. "That's our favourite pony," he told me. "He was born in these very stables. We don't have mares below, but if you look carefully you'll see that some o' them are entire ponies. They stopped allowing mares below a long time ago, Tip's quite an old pony. We are all kind to Tip."

I was glad when we reached the surface and he told me to go home.
VI.

I was admitted to Bishop Auckland grammar school for the September term of 1911. I was then in my thirteenth year. The intake of students went straight from the elementary schools in the district into the lower fourth form. I do not think that I was unsuccessful in that first year, for I shared the form prize with a farmer's son, who came from Haighington, near Darlington. We were all day scholars. We passed into the upper fourth and there began our preparation for the Oxford local examinations.

The school was situated behind Newgate Street. It gloried in the name of "James I. Grammar School". It could have been erected during that monarch's reign, for it was the most down-at-heel establishment in the British Isles. The elementary school at High Orange offered more in the way of ordinary amenities and considerably more in actual cleanliness. It most certainly possessed decent lavatory and ablutory amenities, which was more than the grammar school could offer. There were better facilities in a wayside pub. Actually there were three wash basins for the couple of hundred scholars, each with a cold water supply. The class windows were high, and were never cleaned. The bare deal floors were rarely swept. The one really decent offering was a five acre field.

Most of the scholars came from the far flung districts by train, and consequently assembly was a casual affair, carried out perfunctorily by the headmaster, Robert Bousfield, M.A., a tall, thin man with a balding head and a deep yellow complexion. He was assisted by a small staff which was grossly overworked.
During that year our family continued on its way, unaware of approaching dissolution. The Titanic disaster struck mankind with a devastating force. The world-wide sympathy evoked by the tragedy ebbed away as do all the great tides which assault the imagination of mankind. It was during my first term in the upper fourth that two important things happened to disturb our wonted domesticity. October was slowly abandoning its resistance to the forbidding embraces of November when my father received a request to meet a well-known mining engineer, William Walker of Hinderwell, in the first class waiting room at Middlesborough railway station. There was tremendous excitement in the family. My father met Mr. Walker and received the appointment to act as manager of Boulby Ironstone Mine, near Staithes. His actual employers were the Skinningrove Iron Company, Limited. The other, and, indeed, the most important happening was my mother's pregnancy.

I comfort my recollections of that time with the remembrance of the keen disappointment expressed by Mr. Bousefield when I went to his study to tell him that I would not be returning to school after the Christmas recess.

During the years that have passed over me since that time many large forgettings have eased the many small, wounds beyond regret. Things remembered not are of little consequence. My attendance at the grammar school is one such. Our migration to Boulby ended a phase and began another wherein our family life was shattered beyond repair. How my father reacted to it all I can only guess, for he was not at any time a communicative father at the hearth. Before I presume to judge him I must take a close look at him as the man I came to know. I will not offer excuses for him, nor do I intend to reveal him in his nakedness, for scripture denies me that duty.

My father was a Pharisee of small stature, which is unusual, for to be a Pharisee one must possess a commanding physical presence, else none will be attracted to glimpse him as he prostrates himself before the Lord. If any person or persons can be indicted for permitting him to develop as he did, then they were his parents. Those two ancient posturers in a forbidding world were so attuned, and so close to God, that they were convinced that out of all the universe He had chosen their backyard in a dirty Durham colliery village as the place in which he should dwell. Whenever they offered up their prayers
it was to the top panes of the kitchen window. Their's was a temple behind
the doors of their home, and within it they committed all their goodnesses and
all their sins. Out from their loins they brought eleven children, three boys
and eight girls, and by their own strength and their own exertions they brought
all but one boy and one girl to full maturity. The youngest of the brood,
John, they offered as their sacrifice in World War I. All through their joint
lives an overwhelming religious conviction held them chained to an outwardly
severe existence, which they stained with the lusts of the flesh and tired with
the incontinences of temper. Together they sacrificed everything to their love
of God, and, as a consequence, granted none of their offspring any pity.

My father was the first-born of this Methodist tribe, and upon him rested
all the hopes of their begottings. He kept low in stature, like his mother. He
was doomed to pass his days underground, like his father. His fate was as ines-
capable as that of a lump of hewn coal. As he moved into manhood he sought to
conquer his increasing sense of frustration by exercising what he called his
"spiritual being" in the chapel. His environment was so circumscribed by a con-
glomeration of squalid, shoe-string enterprise that it was impossible for him
to find anything more suitable than a chapel pulpit in which to express himself
and liberate his yearning thoughts. He quite early set about the task of study
in order to obtain the certificates of competency to manage coal mines. He
offered himself to the mines and to God. It was beyond his imagination to real-
ise that the omnipotent God might have no need of his confessions. Such trivial
considerations are for the priest. He "came on to the plan" at an early age.
When the privilege of the pulpit was handed to him he accepted it with glee
and never did he renounce it.

During all his life, my father did not entertain even the slightest doubt
of the rightness or the permission to go forth and preach the gospel. What he
did fail to realise was, that by doing so he alienated himself from those whom
he sought to serve, the coal-owners. That is not to say that any of those re-
 mote and inestimable gentlemen rejected Methodism. Not at all, for they prov-
ided many of the chapels, and attended to the heating of them. There they
stopped their charity. On the other hand they were not deaf to the rampaging
that went on in the chapels. At a mean distance they could recognise the pul-
pit orator in the guise of a "local official", or the active trade unionist. They were not in the least surprised when they saw that it generally was the same person under the cloth cap. They made no effort to strangle the movement. They recognised that the path to the high places in the working class movement passed through the vestries and the pulpits of the mean little chapels. What must have surprised them more than anything was the sight of a certificated man doing the same thing as the agitators......preaching in the chapels.

Had he subdued his passion to "preach the word" my father might not have been overlooked by those who might have been willing to utilise his services as a mining engineer. During all the days of his existence he failed to realise that his propensity to crate, like any small Coleridge, was the reason why he was not allowed to scale the doleful heights of the underworld. He was a sound, practical miner, whose main specialisation was ventilation, and whose surname counted for something in the industry. I remember how, when we got to Boulby, how critical he became after he had had a good look at the ventilatory system. Life was made almost unbearable for man and horse during the shift when all the powder had been blasted. Each face man carried into the mine seven pounds of cordite, and this in the course of his shift he blasted the stone from the seam. The reek thickened the slow-moving current of air into an appalling fog, and this irritated the olfactory passages of man and beast. Unfortunately, my father was not long enough at Boulby to alter the unbearable situation.

I once discussed it with him, and he showed me how expensive it would have been to ventilate the ironstone mine after the manner of a coal mine. The method of extraction was the same as that in the coal mines, that is on the "board and pillar" system, by which the seam was split into huge blocks, some fifty yards square. Under such a method, the air could be circulated through the workings by hanging brattice lanes so that it could enter the place on one side of the hempen cloth barrier and be conducted out on the other side. It was always easy to set up these barriers by utilising the timber roof supports. But in the ironstone mine there was no such timber. One could walk for miles in such a mine under the superincumbent shale without seeing any timber at all. All that anybody could do under these circumstances was to let the mine reek.

53
Looking back on that day I remain convinced that by the time we had arrived at that church my mother had become convinced that we had made a huge mistake in migrating to this area. Her tears were almost ready to fall. She was clinging to my father's arm when she paused in her stride to say to him:

"Promise me you won't bury me up there, Bill."

I heard my father tell her not to talk daft.

It was a long walk to Boulby. We made it without further incident. Beyond the church and the farm, the road levels out as it drives along an escarpment overlooking the falling vision of land loaned to the plough and the rocks. The great sweep of country took the eye to the farthest point beyond Staithes and across in the track of the westering sun to the moors far away. Directly beyond us as we walked the land broke off and space was left to the sea. As we drew nearer we could see that the cliffs were holding back the intruding waters in wondrous peace. Not even the slightest swell was visible to us. We came to a turn in the road and beyond we found our new home.

"This is it," said my father.

"That!" said my mother. "Oh, Bill!"

He gave us the news in his gentlest manner. The pantomime was snowbound somewhere this side of Darlington. It was doubtful if they would get here in a couple of days. He had made arrangements for us all to stay in the farm where he was lodging. We would go there and have tea, and then mother could have a rest.

By the time we reached our temporary lodgings mother had reached a state of utter bewilderment. Her reactions to the almost desolate area into which she had been thrust established a disconsolation from which she never emerged. She sank into a state of silent weeping. Nothing, no one, could soothe her, not even father's unwonted gentleness. She was as a plant that had been pucked up by the roots and flung upon a compost heap in some neglected corner of life. She exasperated us all with her constant tears to such an extent that we failed to recognise her sorrowing heart. Nor could we see that all her joyous hopes of a new motherhood were being washed out of her by her tears. Our disappointment because of her strange, unaccustomed behaviour overlapped all our sympathy, and in the end we accepted it as being in the nature of things.
excavators had robbed it of its alum shale. This new mine was discretely placed, and little harm was done to the scene. To house the miners, the company had erected a row of mean, corrugated iron, semi-detached bungalow affairs, which rejoiced in the local appellation of "the tin huts". The rest of the man power for the mine was drawn from the fishermen's sons in Staithes.

Boulby Grange was a vast house that stood some considerable distance from the edge of the cliff upon a sheltered escarpment. It stood, as from its beginning, remote, almost stark, yet with impressive beauty, especially when viewed from the distance. Those who created it did a good job, as was meet that they should have done. When a man builds a house, no matter how mean might be the ultimate structure, he builds it into the belly of a century. When he does this deed he incorporates a vast amount of labour power into the finished home. And he must continue to lend it all his skill and aid. It behoves all men to build well. Christ, according to the scribes, had quite something to say on the subject that is still apposite. The men who built Boulby Grange did a sound job. They knew nothing about plumbing, for they attempted none. In an alcove on the first landing of the lovely staircase there was a water closet of later date than the house itself. It had a fixed mahogany seat. There was a handle at the side. Where the water might have come from or where the contents of the pan were carried, remained mysteries that we were unable to solve. There was a deep, lead-covered construction outside into which the rainfalls might have been directed, but this had long been abandoned. There was neither a cold water system for ordinary uses and no sink to receive the water we might use. The water we needed we drew from the common tap in the outer yard. The tin huts had much better amenities than we had.

The great house had been divided into two dwellings. A family called Rowlands scratched some kind of existence from the soil which lay in measured acres over the area that had once been defined as the estate that had been the manse of a shipbuilding family called Richardson. Old Rowlands milked a small herd of nondescript kine, grazed a lowly flock of sheep, and fed a goodly number of hens. His two eldest sons worked in the Skinningrove iron works. The youngest boy worked in the mine as an electrician's mate. There were two daughters who helped the mother with the work of the steading.
The old alum shale deposits have long been gobbled up, but the elderly fishermen from Staithes often wandered over the few miles from the fishing village to search for the black drippings of jet that had been overlooked. They came often to the old quarry to search for the weightless stuff, and whenever they did discover a sizeable blob they made their return journey a happy occasion. What they did with their findings of jet was not bruited abroad.

The view from any of our front windows was truly magnificent, for the eye was free to wander over delectable country lying away to the west where the moors sank into sweet composure under the wide skies. A land untroubled by industry. A primeval peace. From the moors went a lovely sweep back to the cliffs beyond Staithes. From headland to headland, without limning the eastern horizon very deeply, the vast arc held in still composure the great sea, shading the communications of the sunlit sky in all its hues. It was a shining pool that edged all the land of our European earth. Daily the sun gleamed over it, defying the clouds to do more than soften its radiance, its gentle radiance, over the waters as they rose out of the far beyond to gather power and purpose to hurl defiance at the foot of the immemorial cliffs, or gently stroke the shingle as the mood provoked it in its ageless war with the cliffs that held back all the weight of the earth and so encouraged the agricultural pursuits of the generations and the growth of the forests that lingered from eternity.

Those cliffs stood straight as the walls of shafts from the bare green earth to the sandless shore. Nothing brushed the manes of the waves but the soughing winds and the gusts of the storms as they held the slow moving ships and the traffickings of men in their unhurried portages over their trackless wastes. Often the cobsles danced as they held their brown sails square to all winds while the fishermen trailed their baited lines. There was a still magnificence about that vast stretch of water, a more impressive grandeur than any I have been privileged to see, and a grandeur that was massive, imperturbable, eternal.

During the few short months that were left to her my mother wept all her tears in the presence of that lovely scene. She sobbed her soul into quietude over those cliffs and waters. How lonely she must have been. How apprehensive. How sad.
There was no possibility of my being transferred to another grammar school. The nearest one was at Guisboro, too great a distance from my new home. The problem was quite easily solved by that accomplished pragmatist, my father. He would take me with him into the mine and, to use his own favourite expression, I could get started to learn how to paddle my own canoe. One fine morning he touched me out of my dreams and told me to get up. I followed him down stairs to the kitchen. I dressed myself in my school clothes. I ate a tasteless breakfast which he had prepared. We left the house together and I followed him to the travelling drift mouth where I was handed a lamp which he had previously bought for me. After he had held a short conversation with the men in charge of the fan I followed him down the wet drift. And thus began my servitude in the underworld which was to last until the early months of 1928, when I and a thousand others were put on the dole.

I was not plunged into a coal mine, but rather was I offered a short apprenticeship to the mystery in an ironstone mine.

The men had all gone into the mine before us. I followed my father with some trepidation. When we reached the drift bottom we left the travelling way and emerged upon the track devoted to the haulage of the wagons. It was the same system as that at Rough Lea, the only difference being that the gauge of the tramway was wider. What did astonish me was the whiteness of everything, the roof, the timber, the ironstone behind the timber. The roof was quite high, for the seam was over six feet in thickness. The thick timbers stretched at intervals across the haulage way reduced the height considerably. This, as I noticed later, caused all the men who travelled it, held their heads on one side. Everything about this new environment was white. There was a fungus very much like
We came to a place where the railway divided at a set of points which permitted a haulage service to two districts, the one being further on along the plane and the other going at right angles after passing along a slow curve which was reinforced by a thick wrought iron rail against which the tubs leaned as they passed round the curve. All the time we had been travelling the engine-plane the main rope had been moving, but the tail rope had lain slack. When we arrived at the junction the first waggon in the train was emerging into our view of the curve. We stepped aside and waited until the immensely heavy train of waggons was drawn on to the main track and brought to a halt. This achieved, the youth whose duty it was to attend the junction coupled the tail rope to the last waggon and affixed the clumsy safety device that trailed behind from the waggon. He then gave the signal and the haulage was resumed. My father simply told me to "bid here" with the yough and then walked away into the darkness.

It became clear to me that most of the ironstone was being drawn out of the area beyond this curve. That the landing was at the bottom of a rather steep incline was obvious to me on account of the free running of the empty trains down the dip, that is without the aid of the tail rope. I later discovered how steep that incline was, and how simple was the activation of the self-acting principle. Later I found that traction beyond the landing where stood the return wheel for the haulage system was carried out in the reverse procedure. The gigantic horses dragged the empty waggons to the sidings at the top of the gradient, and the full waggons were coasted down to the landing by the youths who skilfully manipulated iron "dreggs" which were thrust between the spokes of the waggon's wheels. The seam of ironstone at Boulby thus sloped away from near the surface to a depth where it must, and did, peter out. It was exciting to wander into places high up in the seam and find the miners there working in daylight as a result of their having 'holed out to day' as they had it.

I spent that first day with that youth, and I found it to be the longest eight hours I had so far counted. I could not imagine anything more boring than sitting for hours in that cold wind and waiting on ten or eleven trains of waggons. The next day there was a diversion. Joe Willerby and his mate came upon the scene. Joe was the powderman at the mine, and in the odd hours when
he was not attending to his stores of explosive in a cabin near the cliff top
he did odd and important jobs in the mine. He handed me a whitewash brush and
a pail of whitewash, and, with a smile, enjoined me to carry it, not paint the
floor. Before moving on he made anemometer readings of the current passing to
the junction and those passing down the dip and along to the level landing.
I watched him with some interest. While his mate measured the areas he took
the readings. When his calculations were ended he entered the results in a book,
and then he led the way down into the dip. I followed him. I was in a state of
rebellion, that first condition through which all miners must pass and from
which all must emerge.

Arrived at the landing we reported our presence to the deputy in charge
and Joe took his instructions for the marking of some half dozen headings that
were getting beyond the lines. It was quite a simple job. A heading proved to
be simply the place where two miners were extracting stone. When we arrived
at the first one they were busy boring shot holes. After a cursory joke the
work proceeded. I noticed that running the length of the gallery to some dis-
tance from the face were three white lines seven feet apart painted starkly
on the still blue roof. The job was to carry these lines as near to the face as
was possible. By a simple sighting along two suspended boblines to a light held
near the roof the required distance to the face, the centre line could be
marked and whitewashed. I held my candle near the roof and shifted it as I was
directed until I received instructions to "mark her there!" This done, a
chalked string was passed from the bobline to my mark, each end held while the
chalked string was drawn like a bowstring and let go against the roof. The
resulting mark was covered with whitewash. The two side lines were simply
marked off from a seven foot stick and after the same string procedure were
duly coated.

What did interest me was the fact that I had not noticed even one stick of
timber in support of the roof all along the roads we had travelled since we
left the engine plane. This set me wondering and it brought me to cogitating
the use of the lines on the roof. Why so much care in directing this cleavage
of the stone? And why no timber? That there was great importance to the lines
became apparent when Joe pointed out to any couple of miners that they had
strayed to right or to left, and what did puzzle me was their consternation

63
extracted by blasting. The shot holes were bored by an ingenious, yet simple, drilling machine which could be operated by one man with one hand. The skill of the miner lay in his ability to appreciate the contour of the face and the depth of the hole to be drilled. The soft nature of the stone and the lack of any grain such as is found in coal established conditions of production which had to be overcome by art and guile. Once the hole was drilled it had to be cleaned out with a copper scraper. A calculated amount of black powder was then inserted and pressed up to the far end of the hole. The borings from the hole were then pressed into a sausage shaped core and then rammed into the hole right up against the powder, and gently tapped into a solid mass. When the hole was thus tamped to almost its length a copper pricker was driven carefully through the tamping until the point found the hole in the powder. The rest of the hole was tamped and then the pricker was withdrawn. A slow fuse was next inserted into the hole, and after a shouted warning, it was lit and the two miners made their ways back to safety.

Immediately the shot was fired the working place became fogged to suffocation with acrid fumes. The shortest possible time was allocated for the ascertaining of the result of the shot, and then the roof was tapped, and the work of loading begun. Respiration was taken for granted. Long before the end of the shift the atmosphere became so vitiated that water — tears they might be — escaped from the eyes of the noble shire horses which had been compelled to lend their existence along with their immense beauty to the act of this torturing employment.

Even after this so immense lapse of time I still find myself pitying those great, silent horses tailing out their lives at that abyssmal initial point of the transfer of the ironstone to the blast furnaces at Skinningrove even though I am able to remember and to smile at the recollections of their own impositions of their own limitations which they set upon those brutal conditions. Unlike the pit ponies I was to come into contact with they had to be shown an adequate light as they were being led about their business by the younger members of the mining tribe, which was to apply their unimaginable strength to the pulling of the high-piled waggons of stone, encouraged by the older youths whose tasks it was to keep the waggons on the right rails. They also had to
be given the privilege of eating and drinking, a privilege rarely granted to a pit pony. Upon so sombre an industrial scene those magnificent beasts imposed their own slow haulage tempos regardless of the exasperated hurryings and anxieties of the underworld. In return they had but one offering, that of immense strength, but always did they grant it as they had granted it to the plough and the harrow.

They did not develop any observable attitude to their surroundings as did the pit ponies I was yet to encounter.

In the coal seams the smaller breeds of ponies not only exercised but revealed an indubitable intelligence. I once saw a pit pony actually kneel down on his forelegs and crawl under a low portion of a gallery, and shuffle his legs behind him until he was free from an obstruction. I have seen sheep, far gone in foot-rot, crawling to the slaughterhouse in a like manner on their knees, but that was under the open sky. When I "lost my light" in the pit - and there were many times when I lost my light - I have merely held on to some part of my pony's harness and gone with him through the blank walls of darkness without once his barging into an obstruction.

Not only was this strange sense highly developed in a pit pony. There was also his sense of hearing. In some ponies it was highly exaggerated. Miners were always aware of any disturbance made by a pony during a 'waiting-on' period when there was silence. I have listened to many tales of men about the ability of pit ponies to hear the distant cracks of disturbances in the high strata, and of the miraculous, in some cases, and the disastrous occurrences in others, that followed a pony's 'misbehaviour' in certain circumstances. At Harton Colliery we had a splendid pony called Devon, one of the most beautiful as well as the most intelligent creatures that was ever crucified in the living darkness. He could, and did, inform his driver by pawing with his foot on the rail, of the approach of another pony dragging a tub of coal long before one could see the approaching light. He would only go forward with his own tub under compulsion. One could sense his scorn when the confrontation was not avoided.

But to return to this Boulby mine. There was a considerable band of shale running through the middle of the seam. In actual fact the shale separated two
Easter having passed without trouble, my mother appeared to be passing into the final stages of her pregnancy without deep incident. The repeated visits of the doctor from Hindonwell betokened a careful consideration of her health. So far Mother had not insisted upon sending for her mother to come from Quarry Burn, and, residing in her belief that "it would be just one of those things she had to go through" Grandmother showed no anxiety to make her way to Boulby. One thing did trouble me, and that was the visit of a Mrs Pearson, who was to act as the doctor's help at the confinement. I did not care a great deal for Mrs. Pearson, especially after that night when my father escorted her to her home at Dale House, a hamlet set beautifully in the woods a mile or so deep from Staithe.

"Do you like Mrs Pearson, Harold?" my mother said to me.

She was sitting on the sofa by the great window. The darkness was beginning to blot out the lovely scene she had by now grown to evaluate as something unusual in her life. I was sitting on the piano stool toying with the keys. "Not very much," I replied. "Why do you ask, Mother?"

She was a little while in answering. "That woman will be your next mother," she said. "I will soon be gone now," she added.

I was too surprised to offer her a rebuke. Since then I have often thought about it all.

My father did at last write to Uncle Ralph, my mother's youngest brother, suggesting that it might be as well if Grandmother Whitfield came to Boulby. He was asking a great deal of the old woman to be sure, for she had now gone past her eightieth birthday. A few days later my uncle apprised my father that his mother would make the journey on the following Saturday and that he would
feel easier if some member of the family would meet her at Saltburn station
and escort her to Boulby. As I had always been the messenger for the family I
was sent to Saltburn to convey the old lady to the Orange.

I met Big Grandma at Saltburn. We called her "big" to identify her from
Grandma Fellop, whom we called Little Grandma. She had not changed much since
I had last seen her. She was still the same tall, taut, straight-backed woman I
had always known. Her black clothes and black bonnet, without a spray, betokened
her widowhood. She wore no veil.

We greeted each other with a kiss, and then we crossed to the down plat-
tform and climbed into the train for Whitby. It pulled out a few minutes later.
When we were comfortably seated she said to me:

"Thou haena grown much."

She could see that I felt reproved for avoiding the act of physical growth,
and so she offered me a smile that was charming as the winter's sun. "You take
after the Fellops," she went on. "They don't make big bones." And then to
ease the situations she said:

"How's your Ma?"

"All right, I think," I replied, and I added: "She still cries a lot."

"Aye! I warnèd she does," she reflected. "She's had bairns enough, without
this one. How's your Da?"

"All right," I said.

She sniffed. "I reckoned he would be," she said, almost to herself.

We left the train at Easington. I took her straw travelling case, and we
set off to walk the two miles to our home. "What's this place called?" she
asked.

"Easington," I said. "They changed the name of the station to "Easington",
but I don't know why."

We toiled up the rise uoon which the village is built.

"You looks a dowly place, yon church," she observed. "Is it far to your
house?"


"That bag's none too heavy for you, is it?" she asked. "I'll lend you a
hand. I didn't think it would be so far."
"I can manage a thing like this," said. "No fear o' that."

"It's only got my own bits o' things in it," she said. "I allus travel light. Allus have....me an' your grandfather."

"It's light enough," I assured her.

"You like living here?" she enquired a furlong later.

"Yes," I said.

"What school are you going to now?"

I gave her a short laugh, almost like a scoff. "I haven't been to school since we left High Grange," I told her. "I work down the pit."

"Down the pit!" she stopped in her stride. "He put you in the pit.... your Da?" She waited on my nod, and strode on. "Now, isn't that like Billie Haslop to put you in the pit! Do you like it?"

"I'd much rather have stayed at school," I confessed. "I wanted to be a solicitor."

She walked on sturdily and around the bend of the road. The great sweep of view must have startled her, for she stopped to look at it. But it was not within her appreciation, for she spoke more to herself than to me or the lovely countryside.

"Just like the Haslops," she muttered. "They all talk big about education. They allus did. And when they have the chance they send' scholar into the pit like any driver-laddie wi' a pony! Shame! Shame, I call it. A great shame."

We trudged on and in time we came into the view of the cliffs. I led her to the white gate and opened it. She passed through it and I closed it after her. I was glad to set her "travelling case" down on the ground. As I picked it up she asked:

"Which is your house?"

I pointed to the great house. "That one," I said.

"The big one?" There was incredulity in her voice. "You mean the one wi' the big winders an' the fancy door steps?" She did not hear my answer. "My canny, canny bairn!" she breathed. "To come to all them winders an' all this loneliness."

She becalmed herself. She became herself. Until that moment she had been but a very old lady walking and talking with her grandson. Now she became her-
offered me now word, no tea. She walked out of the kitchen and went upstairs.

The night, with its peace, fell upon the household, and lasted into the early hours of the morning. And then the crucifixion began.

It was a long way for my father to have to walk to get the doctor. The telephone in those days was a novelty, not a public amenity. For my father it was an oft repeated task "going for the doctor". There were many miles lying between our door and that of the doctor. When he did at last arrive at Boulby Grange almost everything was over. Alone, at her great age, my grandmother had brought into the world, as she put it, twin girls. Alone. Unaided. Magnificent old grandmother.

Later, when I was growing into manhood, she said to me: "Nobody will ever know how I got her back into bed after the second one came."

A tortuous delivery. After the passing of almost six decades I can still lie in my bed and listen, as I did on that night, to the screams of a woman in childbirth. Even today I try to imagine that agony when remembering those scalding screams.

Not until the doctor did arrive did my grandmother attend to anything but her soothing of the woman in crucifixion.

I got out of bed and went downstairs to prepare for the saturday morning shift in the mine. I found my grandmother sitting over the fire, her feet resting on the steel fender. The kettle was boiling on the hob. Beside her was a bowl of warm water, and in her lap lay a female child as yet unwashed after the journey from the womb. There was a lifetime of experience enfolded in that washing of a babe. Her hands, scored with the labours and toils of a lifetime in the back streets of the coal industry, aged beyond belief, still held a careful cunning and a copious deftness. The little thing lay in her lap and there it fitted as if it had been measured for the fitment.

"It'll dee," she informed me through her lips that held a large safety-pin. "It's sure to dee. It were born gone three, and now its after five. They should 'a' been washed hours ago. They'll both dee."

"Both!" I exclaimed.

"Aye. Two lassies. They'll both dee."

She dried the babe in a softly dabbing movement. Still nestling the
As she went up to the bed a great gush pain escaped from her old lips.
"Goodbye, My bairn," she sobbed softly, "goodbye my own lass." She bent forward and put her hands upon the dying face, fondling it, granting it if she could a new lease of life. She put her lips to the unfeeling mouth and kissed it. As her sorrow broke, my father took her away, gently, kindly.

"Come away, grandma," he said. "Let her sleep."

The doctor helped to lead her to a chair, and then he went and drew the sheet over the dead face.

The sensation which the death of my mother caused in the district was immense, especially in the village of Staithes, where sentiment was always as copious as the waters from which they rarely drew more than a sparse sustenance. The death had taken place in the early hours of the morning, and by the afternoon strangers were knocking at our door and begging permission to view the corpse and to see the babies. As a family we had not met with such morbid curiosity. In the end my father refused to grant any further privilege.

That Saturday afternoon it was once again imposed upon me to travel to Saltburn and meet the train which was to bring my paternal grandparents to the scene of our domestic disaster. I went with some reluctance, but as the day turned fine I was glad to explore the quaint town. I met my grandparents and convoyed them from Easington station to Boulby Orange.

The weather became exceedingly warm, and my father had to accept the force of the argument in favour of an early interment. This had to take place on the Monday, and, consequently, meant another journey for me to the Post Office in Staithes in order to despatch the telegram to Hunwick.

At that time Staithes was celebrating its annual fair, one of the features of which was an extraordinary visitation of men who possessed horse-drawn, open landaus. With these they touted for passengers "for rides into the country", which, in fact, were no more than rides from Staithes railway station to Hinderwell churchyard and back. Naturally the good folks of Staithes hired practically all the landaus at the fair for the purpose of attending the funeral. Glad in their best blue jerseys, the wives in their best funeral outfits, they succeeded in enlarging the cortege to an immense length. It most certainly made an impressive procession.
directorate of the company would have much preferred that the people should remain undisturbed by agitation of any kind, even that of religion.

I have often wondered if those unseen people ever did place observers in the places where my father went to preach. They need not have troubled themselves, for my father accepted the capitalist mode of production as being ordained of God. Nevertheless, in a short while, they did get rid of him. They showed him no pity. He was cast aside with his motherless children. By the middle of October, 1913, we were scattered about Hunwick and made to wait upon a turn in the family fortunes.

During this rather prolonged hiatus I went to live with my aunt and uncle in Saltburn, and was made nurse to my sister. I was unhappy there. I did not like staying away from my brothers. In due time things did begin to happen. My father received a new appointment, this time in Northumberland, in the district that once nurtured men like Thomas Bewick and George Stephenson.

Before setting out on his new adventure, my father married Mrs Pearson. When I was apprised of this in a letter from my father I set off to walk from Saltburn to Staithes. I do not know why. I presume that I wanted to express my disapproval of the marriage. When I did arrive at Dale House I soon realised that I had better keep my mouth closed. The next morning, being a Sunday, I watched the unhappy couple depart for Crinkle Church, where they were married by the rector who had officiated at the burial of my mother some five months previously.

The good lady had had three daughters by her earlier marriage, but only one of them was brought into our family.

Within a fortnight we had passed out of Cleveland for ever.
The family reassembled at No. 9. Stephenson Terrace, Wylam-on-Tyne one dark, gloomy November day in the year 1913.

Although Wylam had lost all memory of Thomas Bewick, it still felt some remote pride in George Stephenson. Outside the village, some distance along the river bank towards Heddon-on-the-Wall railway station, stood the cottage in which the great man had been born. If that little cottage has any tourist value today, it certainly possessed none when I lived in the village. As it then existed, Wylam possessed two faces. On the Durham side of the Tyne, cladding the low heights beyond the railway station, in complete bourgeois isolation, were the tree-enfolded residences of those who either commuted to Newcastle or worked in the better class jobs, and those without reason to commute to any place or do any work at all. A toll bridge spanned the river and brought one part of Wylam into association with the other part should need arise, which was not often. Although the bridge joined the two parts, the railway from Newcastle to Carlisle severed them without compunction or pity. Curiously enough the Northumberland side had little use for the railway on the Durham side, for another railway from Newcastle to Wylam did all that was needful for the transportation of the folk to the "canny toon".

The less residential part of Wylam was the real village. It had always been there, and it had developed somewhat when men began to exploit the coal measures lying under the land on the north bank of the river. During the nineteenth century shafts had been sunk to the considerable seams lying in a forty fathom shallow. These were the "Six Quarter", the "Five Quarter", the Yard Seam and the "Brockwell Seam", each resting within the earth in that order.
of descent, and at workable levels. Below the Brockwell Seam lay a thinner streak of coal, called the Victoria Seam. It was twenty-two inches thick. It had been left untroubled through time until about a year before we made our entrance into the village. The top three seams had all been exhausted by the end of the century. Trouble had not been encountered underground until the hewers began to remove the Brockwell Seam from Mother Earth to the fireside. Pragmatic mining engineering had laid this wonderful seam in hazard, for all the water at higher levels in the area, to say nothing of that flowing in the Tyne, found its way to the deepest levels, and mining had had to be abandoned.

A year before we happened on the Northumbrian scene, a Newcastle company had been registered for the mining of the remaining coal. That it was a shoe-string affair can be judged from the fact that before making an attempt to clean out one of the abandoned shafts, they had caused a drift to be driven into the Victoria seam from a point in a valley through which dimpled a stream that was tributary to the Tyne. A ramshackle pit head had been set up for the purpose of easing the strain upon finances by mining and selling at "land-sale" the coal, with the consequence that the loveliness of the valley, clothed in beauty by tall conifers, was debouched.

When we arrived at the pit the shaft near the land-sale pit had been cleaned out almost to the Yard Seam. The drift was producing some thirty tons of coal per day. My introduction to the pit was horrifying. No place anywhere in the pit was a yard high. Economy was the first consideration. A small producing force and hopelessly primitive transportation. There was a pony, a pitiful little thing that did not possess the strength of a collie dog, and was fit for nothing better than a knacker's yard. Two young fellows—putters, they were called—shoved and pushed the tubs from landing to coal-face, and from coal-face to landing, and did all the chores of the landing, making up the small trains of tubs and receiving them from bank.

Our job was to produce as much coal as possible and get the shaft cleaned out with a minimum of delay. When all was said and done, it was a most miserable job, but that was not the worst of our troubles. Our stepmother had not bargained for life in the distant North when she had married my father, and now that she realised what it all meant she became more and more soured as the
felt myself being gently raised. I heard the bogey being withdrawn. I felt
myself spinning round. I held on grimly to the rope. We began to drop down the
monstrous throat of the earth. Our ludicrous spinning was brought to a halt.
I opened my eyes and for the first time in my life I became acquainted with a
mine shaft. Dick kept holding the kibble away from the sides of the shaft. As
he did so he examined the shaft. Water bled from it at many points of our de-
scent. As we got further down I could hear the plopping noises of water. It was
weird, uncanny and frightening.

"There's nothing to fear," I heard Dick say to me. "We'll soon be at
the bottom."

At the five quarter seam he gave a loud shout and the kibble came to
rest. Jack Cheesman thrust out his arm and caught the rope, and brought it
to the side. "Lower," he roared up the shaft. We came to the side and finally
we settled on the jutting platform. Garvie Reynolds undid my belt and helped
me on to the landing. "Nowt to fear, was there, hinney?" he said.

I did not give him an answering smile. I had yet to recover myself.

Dick did not get out of the kibble, but went on down the shaft to the
point of that morning's work. After examining the sides he declared everything to
be all right, and very soon after, Cheesman joined him in the sump of the
shaft and the day's work began. Both men wore thick rubber 'back skins'.

It was my job to shout the signals up the shaft and help to land the
full kibble on to the platform and help Garvie to get it shoved to the place
where he could stow the contents at the far end of the tunnel. Dick and Jack
tore at the rubble and muck beneath their feet and loaded it into the kibble.
When it was full it was hoisted up to where I was and they went on digging at
the cloying mess in the shaft.

The shaft was some fourteen feet in diameter. It was a well shaped hole,
and much craft had been expended upon fashioning it. When work had ceased
in it many years ago, it had been filled to the throat with all kinds of rub-
bish, logs, tree trunks, great stones, blocks of masonry, clay, ashes, lavatory
contents, and ordinary soil. When the sinkers had a large obstruction to move
Garvie and I could only stand on the platform and watch those two immensely
strong men extract it from the cloying muck. It was dangerous work, for neither

41
of them could go anywhere to get out of danger when anything was being pulled up the shaft. All they could do was cower against the dripping sides of the shaft and watch the ascent of the loaded kibble, the slung timber, or the slung stone, and be ready to spring out of harm's way should anything untoward happen. And all the time this tedious work went on great blobs of water fell like stones.

As the stuff was excavated it was taken along the old working road between the shaft pillars of the seam, which, curiously enough, had not collapsed during the decades which had lapsed since they were mined. Our illumination came from two candles - mine and Carvie's.

A shaft is a construction inserted into the earth, a construction in reverse, so to speak. And like all structures it must have a sure foundation. Those seams of coal through which it will be made to pass, as well as the final seam of coal it will reach, must be broken only from two opposite sides of the shaft, and they must proceed at right angles to the shaft along one line, and one line only. No deviation from these initial excisions must be allowed. Any branching off from these two incursions into the seam can take place after a carefully calculated distance in ratio to the depth of the shaft. No circumvention of this rule can be allowed that might weaken the coal seam foundation upon which the shaft rests, for any such probing would weaken the shaft as a structure.

In that Five Quarter seam the coal stood in all its primordial and pristine loveliness, blinking back at our simple lighted candles like a shy maiden. Coal is always beautiful when it reflects such light. I can still recall the stillness of that coal as it stood before us in the presence of its own enormous centuries. It was beautiful. And yet we walled it up with the filthy debris that had been inserted by unclean hands into as straight a shaft as ever was shot through the northern earth, walled it up and left it standing in unclean shrouds, safe forever from the consuming fires. In all probability no one has touched it since we covered it up without pity.

All through those days we worked on that shaft. Early in the New Year we reached the Yard Seam. The shaft was bleeding copiously at this point, but this did not impede our progress. We became intensely interested when the
sinkers uncovered an iron collar inserted in the throat of the shaft. My father identified it as "a ring of tubbing" which, apart from its power to reinforce a crumbling section of the stratum through which the shaft had passed, was also a defence against water. Later examination showed that the tubbing had been inserted as a defence against inundation.

The tubbing was in actuality a huge collar made of thick segments of cast iron, and had been inserted into the shaft some distance above the Yard seam down to some distance below it. When bolted together it formed a continuous tube over its length. It was one of the most interesting adjuncts to mining I had so far come across. In all my experience I have not encountered such another in any shaft I have travelled. The only other ring of tubbing I have noticed was in a deep lift shaft in a London underground station. I did once work on the sinking of a shallow shaft, or staple, which we gave a thick collar of cement as we descended. This staple, however, was passing through a fault or a 'hitch' which had flung the seam of coal some fathoms below its own level. The stone through which we dug the shaft was soft and crumbling, and so we had to build the wall as we went down. It was rather an interesting piece of mining engineering. This tubbing at Wylam must have been calculated to the finest fractions. The bolting was meticulous. We examined it in awe and wonder. When we had uncovered it and cleaned the dirt off it and sunk below it we could see it hanging, and gripping the throat of the shaft like time grips existence.

Ingress to the Yard Seam was to be gained through that iron barrier in the shaft, but we had to find out where it was exactly before we attempted to break through the tubbing. All that we knew was that the roads into the seam would be the same as those in the two upper seams, for no other conformation could be conceived in relation to the cage or cages which once ran up and down the shaft itself. Dick assessed that the best place to break through the iron collar would be in the centre, and after much careful jowling, or tapping, with a heavy hammer he marked a precise spot and forthwith began his assault upon the middle of the chosen segment. It was a laborious job breaking through that formidable barrier, but in this he succeeded. By the time this had been achieved an old fashioned winding engine had been installed, and it became possible for us to raise all the excavated rubbish and filth to the surface.
and tip it over the unprotesting face of the nearby field that was already down to corn.

Down and down we sank that shaft. Carvie and I enjoyed our new task up in the daylight. We went on tipping the age-old refuse over the field until the day of the catastrophe. The sinkers had by then almost reached the Brockwell Seam. Dick and Jack were loading a kibble when the water broke through from below. It was Jack's huge shout which brought us all running to the mouth of the shaft. After the commotion had been softened out, one of us was able to speak to the two men working in the shaft, and we soon understood the disastrous situation into which our mates had been plunged. Unfortunately, just at that time the winding engine took upon itself to break down, and from that moment we were all in great trepidation. Luckily the hand winch had not been moved from its original place, and we were able to carry the rope over the old wheel and drop the old wooden kibble on the two men now gradually becoming more and more anxious. Luckily the water rose slowly, and in the end we were able to extricate the two men from their predicament.

The water rose slowly in the shaft. The next day it was still rising. By that time the machinery had been put to rights, and Dick and I went down to assess the situation. It was most strange looking down on that baleful eye of water. There was no sound, no bubbling, just a slow, gentle rising in the shaft, as if the water was climbing up the shaft. There was no sound. And yet, we were in the presence of an enormous force, a force that was raising a huge column of water upwards and away from the darkness. It was eerie watching the level of the water rising in the shaft, not filling it, but rising. That water, which had been imprisoned for decades, was simply rising as silently and as purposefully as a column of mercury in a barometer. We both sat there on our unkers fascinated, horrified. It was stretching the imagination to the limit to accept what was happening there, below us, in the light cast by our candles. There, down there, it went on, soundlessly pursuing its own purpose. If it came up to the point where it could flow over and into the Yard Seam what would we be able to do?

The water stopped rising when it reached a point a few feet below the gantry upon which we squatted. We did not know that it had stopped rising. We
became fully aware of the fact that it had done so. There was an old wooden joist which Dick and his marrow had left undisturbed as they had sunk below it, and which in the past had carried one side of the cage slide. We accepted it as a mark to be submerged. It did not disappear. We waited, watching, and at last we became assured that the force behind that water had become exhausted.

My father came down the shaft some time later.

"She's stopped rising," Dick told him.

"We'd better make sure," said my father.

We made sure.

That night, at home, we discussed the phenomenon.

"What does it mean?" I asked.

"Mean!" cried my father. "How can water mean anything of itself?"

I blushed. "But why has it stopped rising?" I demanded.

My father winged me an apologetic smile. "It becomes quite simple to understand," he said. "The water has risen in the shaft because it has been liberated from one of the things that constricted its purpose to flow downhill. That is obvious. Filling the shaft in kept the water in the seam."

"But what has stopped it flowing away?" I asked.

He shook his head. "Harold," he said, and I knew that he was unable to provide all the answers to his own question. "Harold! Ever since I've known thou, thou's always wanted to know the far end of a fart and where the stink goes."

"I'm sorry," I said as I rose to leave the room. He laid his hand upon me, and I resumed my seat. "The water has obviously been forced up the shaft by immense pressure. There's only two answers to the problem we have before us. Either the Brockwell seam is filled to the brim with water, or it isn't and the water is damned back somewhere, somehow."

Dick came between us. "Then there's a hell of a lot o' water behind that dam," he said.

He rose and put on his jacket. "I'm off for a drink at the Fox and Hounds," he said.

When he had gone, my father said to me: "I can't think the seam is drowned out. In my opinion there is a dam holding the water, and what is more
the dam cannot be very far away from the bottom of the shaft." He gave me one of his rare grins. "Whoever built that dam knew what he was about," he said to me, and then he added, "There's nowt beats good workmanship in a pit. I'd like to meet the man who thought it out." He paused for a considerable moment. "We've been lucky," he said.

And what do we do now?" I asked.

"Find that dam, and find it quick," he replied. "I don't know what they'll think at Newcastle when I tell them."

"And in the meantime?" I asked.

"We'll go down to the yard seam and see what we can see," he said. "It is the only way to get to the Brookwell. The old plan shows a drift." He smiled again. "If we don't find it, Harold," he said, "we'll both be out of a job."

Later that night Dick returned from his foray among the beer barrels at The Fox and Hounds Inn, eager to consider further the problems which now faced my father. "We'll have to find some way of tapping that water," he said in his slurring Cleveland drawl. "But when we do that what are we going to do with all that water? It'll have to go somewhere, and one thing we can be sure of, Bill, and that is it won't flow up the shaft."

"That's just what bothers me, Dick," my father confided. "If we do find the dam and we can tap it we might find ourselves doing more damage than the royalty is worth." He reflected a moment. "I wouldn't like to drown out any of Merry Richardson's districts at Clara Vale. He's a decent chap. Goes to the chapel at Crawcrook. Doesn't preach, though."

"He might," I suggested.

My father shook his head. "It isn't every man who is fitted to preach the gospel," he said. "And it's about time you knew that, my lad."

I waited, and then I asked, "What is a royalty, Dad?"

"The area of the coal we are permitted by the landlord above ground to mine the coal underneath," he said. "He owns the royalty, and that we pay him for the privilege of mining the coal is called a royalty payment. Sometimes it's as high as sixpence a ton."

"But...." I began.

He waved his finger. "Now! Now! It is the way of men wiser than you, my canny lad! So hadn't we best leave it like that?"
The Yard Seam was a revelation to everyone of us who ventured into it. About a furlong away from the shaft we came upon the entrance to a drift, and after clearing our way into it we discovered that it went fairly steeply through the intervening strata of various interesting kinds of stone into the Brookwell. I have seen much better constructed drifts. We descended it carefully and emerged upon the seam, which subsequent exploration proved to be standing, as it had been a shaft, in unbroken pillars of some thirty yards square. My father had brought his safety lamp, which had been presented to him when he left North Bitchburn colliery, but after making a few examinations, he handed it to me to carry, for there was no methane present in the atmosphere.

To our great surprise we found a free flow of air coursing along the main waggonway running at right angles to the drift. However, we were still unconfirmed in our assumptions about the place which had been left unvisited a great long time. We spoke to each other in undertones, as if we were afraid that noise might disturb the roof. All the timber that once had supported this roof had long disappeared. The entire travelling way, and the entire seam, as we later discovered, had been denuded of every stick of timber that might have been left by those forgotten miners. Nothing had escaped dissolution but the coal and stone. Careful examination of the standing coal showed that it was undisturbed by overhead pressure. It did not look like coal, for everything was coated with a reddish slime, which when disturbed revealed a blue, shale-like clay nature underneath, and thick. The floors of all the passages through which we trudged
we trudged lay inches deep under that ancient coating of slime. The little
hillocks into which the standing props and neglected pieces of timber had dis-
integrated had been reduced were of the same detestable filth.

We had ventured into a forgotten world, a damp, silent world which had been
abandoned far back into the century. The imperturbability of eternity rested
coldly within those tomb-like places through which we walked. It was uncanny.

We sat down on our unkers to rest awhile, and, fearlessly enough, to
smoke. Jack Cheeseman soon had his clay pipe going, and was the first to break
silence.

"Know what I think?" he demanded of nobody in particular. "I think this
beats hen-racing. It does, be buggered! Look! Whoever was in a pit where there
was no timber?"

My father gave a short laugh. "Dick and me are used to it," he assured
the huge Geordie. "At the last pit we worked in we could take you for miles
and you would not see a stick of timber, not even lying near the deputy's
kist."

"Well! I'll be buggered!" he snorted.

"It's a good sandstone top," my father observed. "There's been nothing to
disturb it. If we started taking out those pillars of coal you'd find we would
want quite a lot of timber." He got up and measured the height of the seam.
"Just under four foot," he said. He lunged at a piece of coal jutting out
with his foot and broke it off. "Grand coal, this," he said.

"You could tell that in the other seams," said Jack "She was ower good
to abandon, this coal."

Dick held out his candle into the steam of air and watched the flame
blow over on to its side. "What bothers me," he said, "is where the air is
coming from. As I reckon it," he went on, "we're away from the shaft, so how
does the air get past all that water?"

"Aye! That's the problem," said my father.

We walked along the "main going", as we now termed the passage, for a long
time, stopping at intervals to judge the air flow. No one spoke, for no one was
inclined to disturb the graveyard silence. We might be walking into danger,
like ill-equipped pot-holers. And, yet, there was nothing for us to fear. The
had little need for any support at that particular time, for it had edged itself solidly upon its coal supports as the timbers had decayed. The chief danger lay in the appalling silence, the lack of any sound, the deep soundlessness, the absolute lack of vibration that is such a part of a mine. Nothing, it seemed, was interfering with the sleep of this entire seam.

We came upon a well excavated place about twelve feet high, gauged out of the upper rock. The act of disembowelling had been done by meticulous surgeons. It had been almost sculpted into space, and there it continued to exist, as if it had been fashioned in love.

"Now we'll see," exclaimed my father. The exploding of the word "now" was peculiar to the speech of the man, and betokened finality. Perhaps he had learned to use it when he was drawing a large trout out of the Wear. He stood up and carried a lighted candle as high as he could up to the roof. We all offered him the lights of our own candles. For some time he examined the roof. "That's what I call a sandstone top," he said when he had finished his examination.

The men discussed the place, and I listened. They all arrived at the conclusion that this place had been the housing of the wheel of a self-acting incline. The gallery running at right angles to the incline was much wider, and looked as if it had fed the landing, the furnished the waggons for the incline. It must run to a good dip, a steep gradient. It was obvious that the train of full tubs of coal would be lowered against an ascending train of empty tubs, and that the hewers would be supplied with the tubs when excavating the coal. It was an old method of haulage underground.

We explored the incline carefully. Here the width of the passage had allowed the roof to collapse at various points. We went on and on until we reached a fall of roof that prevented our further progress. And so we called it a day, and we retraced our steps to the shaft.

That night I asked my father why we had explored the area so meticulously. He gave his reply rather reluctantly. "You see," he said, "when we tap that water" - he always used the Durham pronunciation of the word - "it will have to go somewhere. I was anxious to see if that area was big enough to hold it when we break down the dam...."
"Which we haven't found yet," I said.

Without speaking, he reached for his pipe, lit it, and picked up the latest copy of the Hibbert Journal, and began to read.

Our search for that elusive dam occupied us many days. The "shoe-string" directors daily became more and more exasperated. We toiled on, and the day did come when we discovered it.

What did surprise us was that the same lavish care had been applied to the construction of the dam as had been on the "engine house" further in-bye. We might never have discovered the dam had my father not surveyed the immediate area around the shaft top and the area near to the bottom of the shaft. I helped him in all this work, dragging the chain, holding the candle, marking the place, and all the insignificant chores that belong to accurate surveying. I learned an immense respect for him during those most anxious days.

The day came when he had to make his decision. Drawing his own plan to the scale of the old plan of the mine, he posited the exact position of the dam. The next day we went and worked under his direction. I watched him carefully, vaguely aware of, and wonderfully appreciative of his mining knowledge. We came to the wall of the mine. Beyond this wall lay our quarry, a monstrous reservoir of stinking water. We could go no further.

"Can back an' find a stopping," he said to Cheeseman.

Cheeseman found the single brick stopping and kicked his way through it.

"Thou shouldn't've done that, Jack!" my father cried.

But Jack had gone through the hole he had made.

It was safe.

We followed him, slowly, carefully. At the end of the pillar of coal we turned right, and came into an enlarged area. Beyond it was a fall of stone, but under that fall flowed a stream of water.

My father sat down on his unkers and lit his pipe. For some minutes he smoked, without speaking. Then, scrambling to his feet and taking his stick, he spoke to the men.

"You'll find her through t'other side o' the fall," he said. "I'll away to bank now."

And with that he departed.
heavy hammer in the other hand. To my surprise, he had the ability to repeat the action when changing hands. Dick had worked with the more powerful of the explosives since leaving school. He was a consummate miner, one of the best I ever encountered. He was never averse to lending a hand to clean away the debris after the explosion.

Excitement mounted when the barricade was fractured. We sat in safety, gloating over the increased flow of water. We knew that all the water had to be liberated, and that our time was short. At first the water flowed more sluggishly than we had anticipated, and we came to the conclusion that the breach would have to be made much wider. But how? The problem was solved by the engineer. He had some cast iron pipes of a small diameter, and he suggested that we ought to screw them together to make a ramrod and batter the fracture from a fairly safe distance. We laboured mightily and at last the dam became fully breached. We scrambled to safety and left the water to sweep to its own unknown destination.

"We'd better get back to bank," said Dick. "There's nothing to be gained watching that little lot."

"Bloody big lot, I call it," said Chestman.

Nothing loath, we went to the shaft and rode away from the water.

The next morning we went down the shaft anticipating a dramatic lowering of the column of water in the shaft. We were bitterly disappointed. It had not lowered a great deal.

"We'll go and see what's happening at the dam," he said to me.

This we did.

We found the water still flowing with the fury of yesterday.

"Think we've done the trick, Dick?" I asked him.

"If we haven't I don't know what else we will have to do," he replied.

The next morning we discovered that the water had almost cleared the shaft, and we were all very happy. I was not so elated when I was told that there was little else I could do, and that I had better get over to the land-sale drift where I would find plenty to do. I soon disliked the pit, its forlorn shabbiness and its eternally bleeding roof.

It was all so different from the ironstone mine at Boulby. It was mining
in severely constricted conditions. In Boulby all action was proposed and disposed in terms of physical strength. There, a man of mean stature could lay hold of a piece of rock up to three hundredweight and hoist it, first on to his knees, and then upwards, the dead weight laying upon bended arms and forward chest, and heave it into the waggon, all in one flowing movement. It was a trick I learned and never forgotten. In the coal measures strength was of lesser consideration than skill. The picks used by hewers were light affairs, never under two and a half pounds and never over four, with points sharpened to the finest degree. It is forbidden to tackle an uncut seam of coal with explosives, for the coal, so finely grained and lain in the earth is impervious to such revolting action. Skill, measured skill, is all that is needed, even today. The great hewers of the past were not mighty men physically; they were skilful and enduring craftsmen.

To watch a hewer was always a revelation for me, especially when in the low seams. In a place only twenty-two inches from floor to roof, a man had to be agile and sure as he assumed the posture suitable for such a constriction of space. Before presenting himself to his task "on the caunch" the hewer had first to divest himself of most of his garments, and so to free his arms and legs from all encumbrance. He then inserted his body wholly into the space and shuffled on his back, taking his pick and shovel with him as he so shuffled, until he reached the point of his production. Within hewing distance of the face he turned himself on his side, drew up his knee to make a cushion for his shoulder, and thus be in a position to manipulate his pick. Then, without more ado, or after a careful assessment of the coal that had to be hewed, the task hewing commenced. The coal glinted in the light of the candle. The hacked pieces of coal began to encumber the little space, and when the heap over his legs began to impede his work, the hewer would pause to push it aside, using his legs only. It was all a matter of hacking, just hacking, gently, forcibly, feeling the mineral out of its fastness. The incision was made close to the caunch, or the floor, a promotion of superincumbency. At the right moment there would be dealt the measured blow, the sinking of the pick point into the upper band of coal. No levering. No angry smashing. Just a gentle trembling of the pick shaft, a given temptation to it to fall. And thus he proceeded until the coal so hewn became an encumbrance, and then he would manipulate his
Down on the gantry the two intrepid men carried out their survey of the rising gas. The flare was lit and dropped down into the suffocating atmosphere until it was extinguished. The point in the shaft was registered, the lamp withdrawn, and a period of waiting set. Repetition proved the slow ascent of the stythe.

My father was sent for and after he had confirmed the new vistation he went home, a sadly disappointed man. He was angry, and remained angry long after Dick and I got back home. There was no point to be gained by discussing something that was present, which could not be wished away, and which had to be overcome.

The office at Newcastle went into panic. Reason did emerge and in due time a small suction fan was delivered at the pit head and erected. A large number of long, tared, sheetmetal tubes, each a foot in diameter, were brought to the place. The first one was securely attached to a side rope and lowered to a point where the next one could similarly slung and joined to its predecessor. In this way a tube was constructed which reached from the fan to almost near the floor of the shaft. The fan was set in motion and left to do its own work.

Each morning Dick lowered his flare lamp to the point where it was extinguished summarily. Each morning Dick cursed the fate that had sent him into the land of George Stephenson. But the morning did come when the flare lamp did not go out.

The shaft was ultimately cleaned out.
The summer blasted over the land.
The Great War seized the world by the throat. Coal was being drawn up the shaft we had sunk.
The year was 1914.
The month was August.
By the New Year our family had reached crisis point and was in danger of imminent collapse. It had long been apparent that the lady my father had taken to wife had arrived at the conclusion that she had made a profound mistake. The life she had visualised when she stood by his side before the altar had not turned out at all well. Her ukase was published at a family gathering. I was her chosen victim. If I did not depart from under the parental roof, she would forthwith "take her 'ook".

I had no alternative, and so I packed my belongings into a couple of brown paper parcels and departed, leaving my elder brother to join the army. The eldest of the three growing sons was soon to go, leaving my father to enjoy the luxury of keeping up appearances with a woman who luxuriated an ungovernable temper.

I found a job at Harton Colliery, Tyne Dock, South Shields.

At the age of sixteen I was on my own in a strange town. Luckily I found lodgings with a good proletarian family. I still consider that I was fortunate to be granted a lifelong place at the fireside of Billie and Emily Gibson, at 23 Maraden Street, Westoe, South Shields. Billie was a small-boned, ginger headed man who hewed coal at Maraden Colliery. Emily was a fine, intelligent and courageous woman. I think that they took me in as a replacement for one of their two oldest sons who had died some time just before the war commenced. Under their roof I crouched among the turmoils of mine and adolescence, alone, stupendously bereaved of my family, without friends, relatives and confidants.

I still recall vividly my introduction to Harton Colliery.
The Harton Coal Company Limited was a vast mining operation carried out on the rich seams of excellent coal lying under the county borough and the rural district of Shields. The tremendous seams were mined at four separate pits, St. Hilda, Harton, Marsden and Boldon. Each pit was geared to a daily production of three thousand tons of coal. It was at that time the most majestic complex in the county of Durham. Each pit was powered by electricity throughout. The economic basis of the structure was a secure and satisfactory coal field. All the produced coal was screened before being loaded into the company's own wagons, carried on its own electrified railway to its own staithes near the mouth of the Tyne, where it was loaded by its own coal trimmers into colliers, big and small. The company's own railway serviced three of the collieries, and the fourth, Boldon, had to obtain the services of the then North Eastern Railway. The entire county borough was consubscript, transport-wise, by the colliery railway. Though all three near pits have been closed and dismantled, the railway, with its everlasting concrete walking, still bestrides the town and makes mock of any attempt to bring the borough into full relationship with the end of this century.

Not one chimney honoured the company with a belch of smoke. Each colliery was drawn by an impressive winding engine and an enormous headgear that imposed its ever revolving wheels over a scene of incessant labour activity. Even the subsidiary appurtenances complementary to the task of creating the coal commodity were impressive. The pit buzzer was an electrified screech. Coal drawing at each pit commenced at precisely six o'clock in the morning and continued without pause until nine o'clock in the evening, five days one week and an extra few hours on the Saturday of the next. During the year the pit made holiday on Xmas Day, New Year's Day, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Whit Monday and August Bank Holiday Monday, and on no other day of the year, except, of course, the alternative Saturday morning. No miner ever took a holiday; none had the money for such an easement.

Three seams were being worked during the time I was there, the Yard Seam, the Bensham Seam and the Hutton Seam. The shaft, which was sunk to the middle seam, the Bensham, was two hundred and forty fathoms deep. The coal won in the Yard Seam was dropped to the Bensham, and that won in the Hutton Seam was drawn.
drawn up through a long drift. All the coal was a shining, beautiful mineral.

It was on a Sunday night round about half past ten when I set off from my new home to work my first shift in the colliery. I made my way rather tentatively to the lamp cabin where I handed over my permission to take a safety lamp. It was a huge, tiled place holding well over two thousand safety lamps, all of one pattern, all made to burn oil. I received my lamp at the counter that ran the length of the room, and followed the men and boys into what proved to be a huge waiting room. At the doorway stood two men whose duties it was to test the lamps. This was done by thrusting the lamp into a chamber filled with gas from the local gas supply. The lamp was merely extinguished. At the other side of the room a youth manipulated an electrical gadget which relighted the lamp by creating an inner flame at the end of a piece of wire near the wick of the lamp.

After I had received my lamp from the youth another young fellow approached me and told me to stick by him. This I was most content to do, for I was feeling strangely perturbed by the immense crowd of men and youths. I was conducted through a set of revolving doors, up a flight of steps, through another door and on to the pit head. The steel head gear ran up from some place hidden below and out to the wheels, which were still enclosed within the huge building. A bugser tore a great leaf out of the closing day and the ropes began to move. Over all there was the continuous roaring of the suction fan which was located some distance below the pit head. All this noise overpowered any which the cages and ropes might make. They seemed to slip silently upwards to receive their human freight.

Each cage carried two decks, and each deck accommodated twenty people. I accompanied my mentor into the bottom deck of the cage. The descent was quite slow. We passed into the great wind created by the suction fan, and at last we were stayed in our progress by a slight bump on to the timbers over the sump. The gates were opened and we all filed out into an arched cavern that was flooded with electric light. Here was space in which one could move. I was totally impressed, for this was something I had not expected. This was mining on an immense scale, novel and to me incomprehensible.

The air moving against me was quite warm. It flowed over the clad body like tepid liquid.
I kept close behind my new companion as we passed under the arched cavern. We passed through a series of wooden doors whose purpose was to isolate the intake from the return. To have had all six doors open at the same time would have caused a ventilatory catastrophe. We emerged upon a section of the shaft landing. Here there were more coal tubs standing on the one side fully laden and on the other side empty than I had ever seen in my life. I calculated that in a mine of the size of this one there must have been some thousands of such springless boxes. Each carried exactly ten hundredweight of coal. There was no noise. A gale of cold, fresh wind caught my breath as I slipped into the passage between the rows of tubs. We were not a great distance from the bottom of the downcast shaft where the coal was drawn. Here again I noticed that the bricklayer and the marser had been busy years before I intruded upon the scene. The tunnel was magnificently arched and safe. Its entire length was illuminated by electricity.

We walked against the wind. Everything about me was built on the large scale, and was set for rapid, unimpeded transportation. There was a neatness of organisation, a simple efficiency, about the place that fascinated me, almost shocked me. There was a total absence of squalor. There was quality as well as quantity embodied in this underground scene, tending towards the intensification of a process that could be felt although everything was still. Later I became used to this shaft bottom and able to appreciate the orderliness of the work. There were two levels of approach to the shaft, the upper one into which the leaded streams of tubs discharged themselves, and the lower into which the empty tubs were received from the cages. There were four decks to each cage, which carried two tubs to each deck. The act at the bottom was an almost automatic one of inserting the two tubs from each deck and expelling the two empty ones in the one movement. The act at the top was the same in reverse. The actual run through of the cages occupied fifty eight seconds. Such organised activity for me was beyond the phenomenal.

I wondered, and I still wonder, just why my father had not tried his own fortune in a pit such as this one. Why had he chosen to scramble about such primitive organisations as Rough Lea and North Bitchburn? Just how reluctant to
to adventure could he have been?

It was the stabling of the ponies that astonished me.

For the first time in my life I found some endeavour to behave with humanity below ground. Those stables could not have been improved upon. The entrance was arched with the same careful craft as the tunnels through which I had passed. At the end of the arch which continued up the gentle gradient the stabling was organised along a passage running at right angles to it. A clean flow of air was borrowed from the main stream and passed through the accommodation for some forty ponies, all of which were munching the same old choppity mixture of the mines. The flooring throughout was cemented, and the stalls were separated by stoutly built brick walls. Light flooded all the stabling. The saddlery was hung across the passage behind the pony. All the walls and ceilings were limewashed. The feeding boxes were copious and clean within the conditions of the place. There was no infestation of vermin. As a matter of fact rats were unknown in that colliery during the time I worked there. Mice existed in large numbers. The water trough was deep and clean, that is, so far as cleanliness can be observed in a mine. There were brooms and shovels to deal with the droppings. The runnels were kept brushed. Everything that could be done within reason was done for those imprisoned creatures. The horsekeepers kept a stern eye on youths and beasts. They examined each pony as it was returned to their keeping after the shift was ended.

I had not seen anything to compare with these underground stables. Obviously somebody did have some care for the little things. At Boulby the transport of the produced commodity was carried out by magnificent Shires and Clydesdales, which were returned after each shift to the stables near the edge of the cliff, like farm horses. But Boulby had been something special, and was a long way from Harton.

We geared our pony, a superannuated old fellow who had been withdrawn from actual coal-putting, and was kept to do the odd jobs with the repairers on the night shift. We let him drink his fill at the trough before we set out to our destination, the landing in the Dandy Bank. The area supplied by this landing was "coming back broken", that is, the pillars of coal which had been hewn many years ago were now being removed. This operation set free the pressures
which had been contained over the years by the coal pillars. The space resulting from this extraction was called 'the gash', and as this became enlarged by further extraction so the strata bore down against the obstructing coal and reached along the areas reserved for transport. Such illimitable pressure disrupted the ordinary life of the mine. The roof supports, even the great timber baulks set closely along the main transport avenues were crunched and snapped, and where this was held the floor of mine was forced towards the roof. Consequently, the broken baulks had to be renewed and new ones inserted, and where the pressure could only 'find vent' by disturbing the floor and the tramway had to be taken up and relaid, and the debris carted away to some nearby pack.

Carting away was our task.

We arrived at the place of work and limbered the pony. This done we attached the limber lock to a small waggon, curiously enough called a 'kibble'. When this was filled with stone and rubble we made the pony drag it to the pack, the place, where it could be stowed out of the way. A great baulk, which had been summarily broken, was taken down and carried away, and when this was done the jutting stone was hacked down and a place cleared for the insertion of a fresh baulk.

The night passed slowly. I felt like a stranger who had strayed into a very strange land. The shift ended. We put the kibble out of the way near the deputy's kist, and led the pony back to the stables, where we unharnessed him, tied him up, and left him. Then we went to the shaft and joined the queue of men and boys waiting to be hoisted to the day.

As I left the cage an official drew me aside and told me that I would not be required to come to work until Tuesday morning at ten o'clock, and that when I did return I would ask for a Mr. Simons and he would tell me what I had to do. I nodded acquiescence and walked on to the lamp cabin where I handed in my lamp, and out into the morning air. The air tasted sweet. The morning had yet to break. I walked away without haste. The air was blowing fresh from the sea.

Thus I began my new life in an underground from which I would not break free for thirteen long years.

I awaited the coming of Tuesday morning with some trepidation, for I had a
After a few days I had sorted out my new impressions and I had accustomed myself to the nature of my task. The young Simons disappeared from the work party I had merely been his displacement.

Before very long I had grown aware of the fact that our task, which was the sinking of a staple, a short shaft, was nothing other than a calculated waste of money. It was a prestige project. In a mine! The seam of coal had struck a deep hitch, or a fault, which had snapped it off abruptly from its own level, and thrust it down some sixty feet or so to a deeper level from which point continued. Such aberrations are often disclosed in mining operations and when they are they must be overcome. The excavation upon which we were employed was the sinking of this staple, but the one which would have occurred to most engineers would have been to slant a drift from the one level to the other and so continued the established mode of main and tail, or endless rope, haulage.

It was most curious that we were doing this in a world at war. We had not by then succeeded in getting on level terms with the Kaiser's army, and here we were building a complicated thing like a minehead in a faulted region which could have been so easily overcome by straight drifting. The excavation these three shifts of men were engaged upon was almost fantastic in its conception. A great deal of work had been accomplished before I came on the scene.

The approach to the preposed site of the staple was already accomplished. The height of the tunnel was almost ten feet. The side had been walled by the bricklayers and the roof laced with enormous iron girders. It was the most careful bricklaying I had seen so far. At the end of the tunnel the wall had been continued through a much wider excavation and the narrowed down to a further excavation, suitably girdered, to admit of a splendid winding engine. Two immense steel girders, two and a half feet in depth already stretched against the lip of the ascending excavation, which, when finished, would enclose the pit head gearing. A wall of considerable thickness was to be raised upon these two closely set girders. When fully constructed the gearing would stand in a space forty feet high at the wheel heads and sloping down to the winding engine.

It was a stupendous waste of money and of labour, in a time of war.

Everything was almost fashioned fully in anticipation of the day when the roof supports would be withdrawn and the great cavern could be shaped and made
ready for coal transportation. Until that day arrived it was the duty of us all to keep the road of escape clear of all things that might impede flight.

I waited the actual felling with deep interest.

To my astonishment and my delight it was performed during one of the shifts when I was on the late, night shift. Bill Corner, the master shifter, came to superintend the work. He was a small, leucacious, experienced, old miner. I watched him examine the forest of timber that held up the dangerous roof, and I noted how nimbly he shielded his lamp from being extinguished as he made his assessment of the task. Now carefully he examined that place, how minutely, I still recall with admiration. He singled out five thick props and marked them with a piece of chalk, exactly like a forester when selecting the trees and fating them to the axe.

"If we draw these five buggers we'll get the lot down," he announced.

None of us present reflected upon his observation. Bill was the boss and his word was sufficient.

"We ought to get these three down with a mell," he said.

He picked up the heavy hammer, set it down, and then took off his coat. He did not ask any man to undertake the work. He walked back and hung up his discarded garments, spat upon his hands, and walked back to the point of action.

He took the mell, and struck each of the props separately. Then he called for the axe. I have said that he was an experienced miner, but now I will say that he was a most courageous miner. With the axe he disabled both the forward props and left them. Despite the fact that above him there came an ominous remonstrance, he stepped back to deal with the third one. This one he overpowered and when it was free, he threw it back for one of us to take away.

"She's gannen niceties," he said. "Set the anchor here, Jack," he told Simons.

Jack hacked a hold fairly deeply into the floor, and then inserted a stout prop into it and fastened the top securely against one of the engaged girders. When this was done a instrument was produced which was new to me. The miners called it "the joss". The main part of the instruments was attached to the base of the prop by a chain which locked on the appropriate hook. A lever was then set within the slots on the basic frame and a long chain attached to t
this lever was carried to the next prop due for demolition and fasted to it. When all was ready the handle of the lever was brought into play and this tightened the chain and asserted great pressure upon the prop. When the full extent of the leverage was exhausted a fresh hold was taken on the shortened chains. As soon as the prop holding the roof began "to give" the mass resting upon it went into loud protest, offering to the bystander the sensation of being concerned with an earth tremor. The noise was not awesome, but was minatory and menacing. As the links were drawn against the prop the protest developed, and catastrophe became imminent.

"Give way, Jack," said Corner to Simons who was working the machine.
Jack released the lever and let the chain go slack.
"Let her settle," said Corner.
We all sat down to eat the food we had brought with us. As we ate, we talked and joked. The water in my bottle was deliciously cold, steel cold. I suppose we all enjoyed the recess. When the half hour was speed, Corner stood up and said it was time to see to the other, the last, prop.

"But what about the prop we're on?" demanded Bill Vaughan.
Corner smiled. "About as much use now as an old man's cock," he told him.
"You oughter know," muttered Bill Vaughan.

Corner walked towards the confusion, boldly, to where the felled prop was staggering under unbearable weight, tossing in the throes of the impending fall, and calmly detached the chain. Without fear he went to the final prop and passed the chain about it and made it secure. Then he walked back. "Let her have it," he said.

As the prop began to give way the mass of rock above began to roar out its exasperation at its slow disembowelling. With each engagement of another link in the chain by the lever the roar increased. The tempest increased. Thunder bellowed over us and tore out of the cavern beyond. And then quite suddenly the deed was done. The chain went slack. There was one gigantic crack, as if the skull of the mine had been broken, and then the silence of prehistory settled again into its wonted sleep.

We all stood, entranced and horrified by the deed we had done.

"That's finished that bugger," said Bill Corner, and with that he put on
was always on a Friday, was shifting gear day. On that day the men affected carried their picks and shovels from one part of the mine to the other. Such a practice could only be carried out where the old fashioned modes and manners of coal production existed. When machinery came to be introduced, the board and pillar process ceased to be viable, and the longwall system was introduced, a system which destroyed the old individual methods and imposed a collective arrangement underground. Under this system loading at the face became organised, and the need for ponies and pony-putters was no longer felt. Mechanism of the production stamped ruthlessly upon the old ways of men.

I was gone from the mines before the new method was adopted at Harton.

I must confess that my upbringing within the mining industry had not produced me as a person to whom an overman would be eager to help along. I had little to offer in the matter of great strength and skill, but much to proffer in that of observation and, later, politics. I remained with the repairing gangs and stayed on the night shift until I was caught up in the war machine at the end of 1917 and found myself at Tidworth Camp as a private in the Fifth reserve Cavalry Regiment, and wearing the badges of the 10th Royal Hussars.

We were examined en masse at Sunderland, and transhipped to Newcastle where we rested on the bare concrete floors, without blanket or covering during the most miserable night I had so far spent. The next morning we were appointed to our places in the forces, and by nightfall we were on our way to Tidworth.

At Tidworth we were not expected in such numbers. The R.S.M., a dapper little Irishman, passed us all off as the best joke he had come across. We stood on the square in front of the Alliwal Barracks until he had laughed his head off, and then we were found places to sleep. The next morning we were fed. It took the military authorities the better part of a fortnight before we were assimilated into the various squads, and much longer before they had us satisfactorily inoculated and vaccinated.

For all the good we did ourselves or our country while we were at Tidworth we may as well have never left the mines.

I was put in "A" Squadron, Troop 3.

I was trained as a cavalry man. I was taught how to fight with a sword. I was introduced to a rifle and a bayonet because a cavalry man carried all three weapons.
I am long enough to enable me to become revolted by the warm, clammy breath of the mine. It soon became clear that our repatriation to civilian life had come as a surprise to the management, and for once in a while they could find very little for us all to do. We got the chance to harden our hands slowly, and so "get used to it all".

I enjoyed those few early and easy days, and I was sorry when I did find myself undertaking a task that called for resolution as well as skill in its performance.

Nothing had changed during my absence in the forces. It was the same old Harton Colliery, the same bleak, desolate habitation of the imprisoned people. The cage slid upwards out of the damp, fetid atmosphere in the shaft and settled on the keps to receive its load of humanity. The doors were opened and once again I passed with nineteen other comrades on to the deck of the cage. Once again I grasped the bar running along the top of the deck, and once again I hung my head against my arm as we went on and on to the bottom of the shaft. Once again I felt that utter forlornness that follows after the shearing of individual freedom, as I became a piece, a part of a pawn, in the majestic purpose of the capitalist mode of production.

Was I near to rebelling? It did not occur to me to make the assessment. And yet there was a grim feeling of doom upon me. Was it doom, or was it a fracture of purpose? Before I enlisted I had responded to an urge to write what I thought might turn out to be a novel. I do not recall that early effort of mine now except the demountment which was a spectacular suicide of the heroine by throwing herself from the topmost tower of Durham Cathedral. I forget it all but that savage ending. And yet the urge was there. I had always wanted to write. All the time I had been at Tidworth the flicker had not died out: I still felt the urge to write, even in the furthest reaches of the mine, close against the goaf. Now that I was back where I belonged I might feel the urge again.

They did not treat us roughly on that first shift. Indeed, the management was as non-plussed as the military authorities at Tidworth had been, as to how to fit us into the machine. As the days wore on we were sorted out and in the end we were fully established within the dimly illuminated anonymity
of the pit.

The year 1919 was a year of intense proletarian dreaming. The general election had taken place just before we were demobilised. I voted for the first time in my life at that election. The voting paper came to me by post. To my surprise I found that I had been put on the electoral roll of the Bleydon constituency. William Whiteley, who later became Mr. Attlee’s chief whip, was the Labour candidate. He did not win, but he did win at the next election, in 1922, and he held the seat until he died.

Despite the overwhelming victory of Lloyd George and his coalition, the proletarian world of men did not cease to dream. The most outrageous fantasy was the Sankey Commission. How patiently and particularly did we drool over the reports of that famous clash of personalities. Bob Smillie rose up before us all as the greatest phantom of endeavour so far produced. We gloried in his battles with the Marquis of Londonderry. How we gloated over the possibility of the mines becoming nationalised. How we dreamed. How we stretched out our hands towards the towering pit head gearing to take it, and all it signified, into our own dear keeping. Poor, soft, deluded people that we were.

When Bob Smillie and Chiozza Money came to address the first Durham Gala after the war, we carried our banners and escorted our brass bands with the deepest of reverence. In those days the Gala was a sight for all men to witness. The enormity of the proceedings outstripped the imagination. Perhaps it was the setting that lent privilege to the proletarian display. Maybe the vast muster ing of the colliery tribes under the arches of the massive, brick-built viaduct that spans the yonder part of the city and carries the great railway grants a piquancy to the subsequent proceedings. The boomings of the drums provoking the attention of the tribes and then the double tap which unleashes the brazen sound into an almost dreamlike unreality and sets men and women marching. Repeated almost two hundred times, the resultant noise and slashings of colour provoke an almost spiritual aura that hangs like a proud destiny over the immense beauty and the rich colour of the city.

The narrow streets – that were then – forced an intermingling of marchers and amused watchers. The crossing of the bridge over the Wear, that cowers like a coward within the ample shade of the great cliff that holds both castle
and cathedral up to the arms of God, was always a strain lain upon the carriers of the banners. The passing over the bridge beneath the lovely scene evoked by tree-clad heights and glory-crowned buildings always evoked for me some strangely murmured benediction wailing softly into unreality. There is nothing so magnificent within Christendom that compares with the loveliness of Durham’s cathedral. Ordinary men must have built it, but they must have been men filled with an extraordinary vision, for they left it where it stands encompassing, and encompassed by, its own earth, rising upwards to immemoriality like a prayer passing the lips of a woman suckling her babe.

It is this cathedral which has softened the harsh lines of the men of coal every time they have ventured into the city to listen to the orators. It is never forbidding, never minatory. It watches them marching to their venue, and when all is over it beckons them back to their possession of their own lives. It is this half-church, half-refuge that softens the spirit after the pains of unremitting toil, and tempers the thunderings of exhortation into croonings and beliefs.

Leo Chiesza Money removed his hat and stood up to speak to us on that day. The gala had been a revelation to him to such a degree that he was still astonished and bewildered. Bob Smillie sat smiling. Both had been fighters at the hearings of the Sankey Commission. Bob could understand the little man’s bewilderment. And when Money had breathed his prayer over the vast crowd, "God bless you all," Bob reached over and patted him on the shoulder. Bob was a showman in his own right. He stood up and accepted the acclamations of the concourse. While it boomed over the city, and stilled the rowers in the boats on the lovely breast of the Wear that flowed nearby, he mounted a chair, and when the noise had died away he began to speak.

Monday came, and with it came disillusion. The Sankey Report was rejected by that prince of Prime Ministers, and the war was begun. Frank Hodges was the secretary of the Miners Federation of Great Britain at that time. He too, had played a valiant part in the Sankey charade. He had yet to guide the Datum Line struggle of the year 1920.

The troubles of 1920 were succeeded by the hunger of 1921. We struck and we failed. The ten millions subvention were swallowed up, The strike came, and the sun blazed down
Work in the colliery brought friendship as well as comradeship. Strangely enough this never came to me until I became a coal-putter. To this day I have not been able to understand why I undertook to become a piece worker at the coal face, for I was neither physically, mentally or emotionally equipped for the sterling dialectics of sweat-laden production. In the first instance, pony-putting required a sanguine temperament, consummate skill and commendable strength. A man can possess all these attributes and yet be unable to co-ordinate them adequately enough to be pronounced efficient. In the second instance, a pony putter required but a modicum of imagination, an attribute which I possessed to such a degree as to exist within the borderland of actual fear. But I will not excuse myself, for I must admit that I was not a very good putter.

The act is monotonous. The pony is yoked to an empty tub. After the putter has hung his taken inside the tub he must squeeze himself between the pony’s rump and the tub and utilise his posterior to go one way and his knee to go the other way. At the same time he must urge a not always unreluctant animal to make haste to the coal face and greater haste on the way back to the landing. Near the coal face the pony was detached from the tub, and the tub rolled on its side clear of the tram line. The putter then follows the pony to the point where he can attach it to the full tub and get the pony to exert his strength in order to start locomotion. After he has got past the overturned tub, the putter puts it back on the line and runs it to the face. He then joins the pony and proceeds to the landing. There were young men who enjoyed so unimaginative a task.

It was when I suffered an accident which laid me off work for some time that I made friends with Joe Mackey.
Joe was my first real friend, and as he was deeply embroiled in friendship with Bill Blyton, we made a fast friendship for the rest of our time. We were deeply interested in trade unionism, and so our initial friendship found fundamental cement in the lodge activities. A miner's trade union branch is called "a lodge". Joe Mackey became the general managing factotum of the four collieries in the Harton group under nationalisation, and retained that position until he died. Bill Blyton is still a member of the House of Lords.

The members of the lodge chose me to be their Council Delegate for the year 1923/24. This was quite an onerous duty, performed every five or six weeks by attending at the headquarters of the Durham Miners' Association in Durham.

At that time there were some two hundred lodges in the Association. The council meetings were days out of the usual rut for the delegates. Each man was given an honoursarium and expenses for attending, which added to the joy of comradeship in the pub that still stands under the arch at Durham station.

The meetings were formal. Council met in a rather splendid oak panelled, comfortably furnished hall large enough to accommodate a good sized public meeting. On the platform were seated the elected leaders of the association, six or seven shrewd men who had worked themselves up from the coal face to the checkweigh cabin at their local collieries, on through the chapel vestries and pulpits, or the bar room of the workingmen's clubs, to the high regality of Red Hill, Durham.

The meetings ambled at leisure through the printed agenda. The Treasurer offered a financial statement if ever one was requested, and the rest of the officials - agents, they were called - conducted such debates which called in question their actions or the actions of the departments for which they were responsible. Jim Robson, the President at that time, a huge, powerfully built man, with a voice to match on all occasions, better dressed at all times than any trade union leader I ever met, except Frank Hodges, could always iron out any decent sized rumpus on the floor. He was a great addresser of mourners at a grave side. He possessed a fine flow of words, and a manner of delivery that suited every aspirate. Had he been grained he might have come up somewhere near to Chalipin. He had that kind of figure, stupendous. He never forgot to call the council to its feet whenever he spoke an obituary. He was a presence.
the social behaviour of the proletariat. To borrow, yes; to beg, no. It became pitiful. Whatever happened, and much did happen in those now distant years, had happened within and as the result of the heavy bombardment of invective and discontent of the South Wales miners. To us organised mendicancy was not industrial struggle. It was not even fighting and suffering - it was "greeding" as the northerner has it. In all probability the act was the result of the close proximity of the Welsh to the large towns, Bristol, Birmingham, London. The world beyond their borders was there to be sucked, and sucked they did so that the revolutionaries might survive. It did not matter if one survived on the crusts of charity, so long as one could lean on the wisdom of Moscow.

When the general strike fizzled out on its tenth day of existence, and the attitude of the miners solidified into a prolonged struggle, the swarms came down from hills and up from the valleys of Glamorgan. A group, complete with an astonishing bass and a tenor who could hold a loud and prolonged high note arrived at 13 Penywern Road to rehearse for the gutters and for such concerts as might be arranged. After a while they moved into the attack upon the susceptibilities of the general public so that Mam and those back home could survive.

As northerners we stood aghast at the temerity of these singers from Wales. It was an aspect of the class struggle that was completely new to us, and we just had to accept it. Later, I was to discover that not only the big towns were exploited, but the whole of the south west. They went wherever they could in order to tap the charity of the people. They sought and captured alms from the west country from the people who had never experienced the normal wages and affluence of the miners.

The highlight of this unmitigated importuning was, in my opinion, the Aberfan disaster. One can say with the deepest of feeling that that devastation of so many young lives was the most pitiful single occurrence since Belsen. Human pity was touched to the depths by that immolation of so many children in their school. The whole world held its breath when it came to realise how those children died, and it emptied its purse upon a collecting plate that was much wider than the British Isles. If charity can ease distress, then charity was offered to Aberfan.

Where money is concerned the Welsh show little reticence. It was inevitable and lamentable that there should be squabbles and the spilling of oratory on
the subject of the disposal of so vast a sum as that which was poured upon the suffering village; and it was also lamentable that the rest of the mining proletariat should be distressed as a result of these squabbles.

There have been many tragedies in the mining industry up and down the coalfields of this country. Men, youths and boys have been slain in their scores and in their hundreds over the years. None of them evoked the pity and the compassion that was given to Aberfan. Despite the instrusion of the male sob sisters of the television authorities, the tragedy was capable of moving ordinary people to despair. The pity is that greed luxuriated on despair. The subsequent arguments were outside the belief of the outside miners, outside their conception of sorrow and bereavement. The demand that every penny subscribed should be shared out among the bereaved was completely alien to the age-old practice of sorrowing quietly and suffering patiently. In Durham, our forefathers had buried their dead, wept what tears they could afford, and gone back to the coal face to hack out a living from the earth. They neither asked for nor received compensation for their wounds, even when charitable people handed over their pity in the form of gold. The northern miner has been deeply aware through the ages that charity is incapable of assuaging the discomfort that comes with pitiless death. The Hartley Disaster in Northumberland evoked a depth of public pity and horror, and actually stirred the Victorian soul to munificent charity. The fund grew and was taken over by non-mining men, and out of it they paid a moiety to the widows. The fund is still farmed somewhere in the north.

My wife and I were on our way to spend a holiday in the Lake District. At one point of the journey, Crewe, our compartment was filled with a couple of families from South Wales. There was a widow and her children, and a couple with their's. We soon moved into conversation, and we learned that they were going to Blackpool for a fortnight's holiday. We congratulated them on their privilege and hoped that they would have a good time.

"No privilege of ours," the man informed us. "It's our right. We come from Aberfan. They think all the children in the village should have a change, a holiday, so we're on our way to see they get it."

"It's only right," broke in the widow, "only right we should go with the
here to keep the family from starving. We had no money left."

"Did the colliery company give you anything?" I asked.

He merely smiled. He did not bother to shake his head.

The public contributed a large fund of money for the relief of the sufferers. They paid out some of it to the widows and orphans. The rest is locked up somewhere. Perhaps the Charity Commission knows where it is.
William White Craik was the Principal of the college. He had succeeded Denis Hurd. When I entered the institution there were two other paid lecturers, Alex Robertson, M.A., and Thomas Ashcroft, an ex-student who had been appointed as lecturer on economics following the translation of the previous lecturer to membership of the House of Commons. Craik dealt with marxism and philosophy, while Robertson undertook history. Outside lecturers came in on invitation. Belfort Bax, a contemporary of Marx and Engels, and a long-forgotten writer on ethics, had been a constant visitor up to 1923. Eden and Cedar Paul often came to lecture on psychology. Their contributions to the translations of the Marx classics is now somewhat overlooked, but for those who would sample the work of Marx in translation had better be advised to have a look at the work of Eden and Cedar Paul. Whenever Eden lectured, Cedar was in attendance. He was not an accomplished lecturer, but his lectures were always carefully prepared. Cedar was a good looking, full-busted woman, affable and helpful. She could sing, and she often sang to the students. One could see that Eden always deferred to Cedar much the same as Sidney always deferred to Beatrice Webb. In all probability they copied the older couple, but they never achieved their intellectual isolation within the Labour Movement.

Henry Noel Brailsford, a rotund, serious, little man, happened along a time or two, and so did Raymond Postgate, who at that time was trying to become an authority on revolution, if not on Marx. J.T. Walton Newbold was quite a fixture after he lost his seat in parliament until he drifted away. He was a
gentle exuding sweat, who was the social man - little Jimmy Strachan or the man with the tightly rolled umbrella, and the shining black brief case.

We had not been there very long when Joe Batey, the member for Spennymoor, an old friend of mine when he was checkweighman at St. Hilda colliery and I was a delegate to the Labour Party and Trades Council, invited us to meet him at the House of Commons. The Labour Government was then teetering on the edge of disaster and MacDonald was apprehensively awaiting the kick which Lloyd George would deliver that would send them all back to the hustings. Joe was a short, stout, unsmiling miner. He once observed to me in his sweet Tyneside dialect:

"The reason why I don't smile often, Harold, is I have so little to smile about."

When we got into the outer lobby and had sent in a green card he came out almost immediately. He must have been standing near Annie's Bar waiting for the messenger who carried a brass harness about his neck.

"Have ye had your tea?" he asked.

We told him we didn't want any, and he conducted us around the bits and pieces of the great building.

"Why all the pictures, Joe?" enquired Jack Lonsdale, who was a constituent of his.

Joe was always serious. He stopped and held our gazes. "Would ye like to live all your working life among a lot o' statues?" he demanded. "Don't ye think a bad picture is better to look at than a good statcher of a man who should've been drowned when the midwife got him out?"

He saw us to the clerk at the entrance to the gallery and left us.

An unimportant debate was going on at the time, and, as usual, a small spatter of members dozed about in the chamber, some with their feet up, none taking the slightest notice of what the member on his feet was talking about. The Speaker, bewigged and solemn as an owl after venting all his hoots, sat behind the clerks, clad like barristers proud of their briefs, sat immovable on their chairs. The mace lay on its rest at the foot of the table. A member who had grown tired of the charade of debate crept down the gangway, paused to bow to the Speaker, and strolled out of the chamber. It was the most solemn farce we had ever seen. Surely, somebody did the governing of the country somewhere.
other than in that place. A lone figure sat on the government front bench, and he appeared to be fast asleep.

I was reminded of that quip by George Bernard Shaw that a socialist majority in the House of Commons would be as incapable of producing socialism as a sewing machine of producing fried eggs.

Suddenly interest became stirred. Lloyd George had come into the chamber. The Speaker acknowledged his bow. We all recognised him, and we all strained to overcome the inhibitions imposed by the uncomfortable seats in the gallery and see just what he was doing. A small, white-haired physically insignificant man, and not all that good looking either was now amongst us. He had strolled, aged-worthied, and gone to his place, a man who had defied the tempests and forced the winds to quit their rajings. Soon his name was called, but we all had to wait until the chamber had filled up before we could hear what he was saying. Ramsay MacDonald and John Wheatley came in, as did Stanley Baldwin. It was quite an important speech, quite short, quite clearly enunciated as is all Welsh speech. When he sat down another member was called, but we could not hear his voice or what he was saying until the chamber had emptied again.

We fled the place.
XVIII.

The College was altogether a strangely casual affair. There was no published syllabus of lectures. Everything that happened came about without any apparent design. Our basic instruction, as we soon found out, was to take place after we had listened to the initiatory lectures of the Principal, and that until we got over that hurdle we would have to make do with what we could glean from the lectures on the Theory of Value by Ashcroft and on history by Robertson.

There was no introductory lecture on economics. We entered the college precincts as innocent as new-born babes. We were unaware of the writings of Adam Smith, David Ricardo, or even John Stuart Mill. We were a small group of eight, and we sat down to read the first pages of the first volume of Capital in pure innocence. We were simply introduced to a world of thought that existed outside the very world of men. What is more, we were given to understand that what we were about to study was the epitome of all the thought of men, the thought of Karl Marx, wherein was embalmed his theory of value, of historical materialism and of the materialist conception of history. Conjointly there was the philosophy of Joseph Dietagen, a German tanner, a contemporary of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels, and who died in America.

We did not wait upon Marx, we were made to wait for the Principal who would, in the fulness of time, show us how to wait upon Marx. He was a very busy man, who had to make constant forays into the outside proletarian sphere to gain credence for the college. In other words he was a propagandist. Whether he was or was not a brilliant lecturer is of no importance. He was incapable of overcoming a deep hesitancy when he was searching for the right word, just like
the present Archbishop of Canterbury. At times his gutteral hesitations were painful to listen to. One felt impatient with him, just as one did with Winston Churchill and his three word and one halt in all his passages of oratory. The day came when we sat down to Craik's first lecture, which was on working class education, a lecture so perfectly rounded as to make sure that he had delivered it hundreds of times before. The lecture did not raise the question: what is the working class? nor did it define the Marxist view of the class nature of the society of which we formed a part.

The working class was taken for granted, which, in the future, was to stand in receipt of all power, and which, consequently, stood in dire need of a fully independent working class education. The next lecture was a historical excursion which brought to our notice that ever since civilisation began men had striven to think philosophically, and that such an action had begot a love of wisdom. The third lecture hit us where it most certainly hurt. We were left rolling about the lecture room in a state of utter bewilderment. All the second year students had made it their business to attend this particular lecture, mainly, as I suspected, to savour our bewilderment. Hitherto none of us had ever heard of Josef Dietzen, and none of us had ever asked ourselves what exactly were we doing when we were thinking. To make matters more confusing how were we to understand understanding, even if we were to agree that he who understands understanding cannot misunderstand. I think that Craik thoroughly enjoyed delivering that lecture. He could, I am certain, assess the degree of consternation he managed to cause. He did not know at the time that it would be the last time he would ever deliver that lecture in the College.

It is still strange to me after the passing of almost half a century why Craik thrust us simple young men into so savage an association with philosophy, we who had not gained possession of an inkling of the arguments of the philosophers. We might have heard of Plato, Socrates or Aristotle, but even if we had done so there was no reason why any of us should have considered them to be all that important. For us, Aristotle was some ancient Greek who had written a book about babies. We were thrust even deeper into the morass, but never were we offered even a potted biography of Kant, Locke, Butler, Hume, Hegel and all the tribe of German philosophers. All we were instructed to do was to locate.
them and reject them on the grounds that they were not relevant to the needs of the working class. We could have told Craik that ourselves, because we could assume that even if they were entirely relevant to our intellectual needs they would not help us at all in the coal face.

What were we all doing when we were thinking? What is thought? Does the brain secrete thought in the same way as the liver secretes bile? How Craik toyed with us and our relations with the objective world. It is still very hard to forget our tortures. Craik idealised Dietzgen. He was on correspondence terms with Eugen, the son of the great old man. We toiled over the pages of The Positive Outcome of Philosophy and The Nature of Human Brainwork as well as The Philosophical Essays. During our discussion periods he met all our questions with all the adamantine arguments that lay embalmed in the Dietzgen corpus, and in the end we memorised all the formidable cliches and wrapped them in our own mental parcels.

We toiled at our Dietzgen more than we did at Capital that first term. We did our best to accept the old tanner's castigations of the spiritual world. We argued and angered. Michael Foot will never be able to understand our disastrous predicaments. Aneurin Bevan had to go through all of our experience, and because he did so with his bright mind he reframed his intellectual approach to politics because of his individual mastery of the Dietzgen approach to the general and the particular, the relevance of the real and the unreality of the relevant, the relevance of every thought, every thing. Such glib reasoning fitted the volatile mind and illuminated for the Welshman his own semantic power.

What it all was going to lead up to we never found out, for Craik was gone from the College before the year 1925 was fairly begun. We had returned to the coalfields for the Christmas holiday, and if we hoped at all it was that our studies would take us on a long and searching study of sociology that would link up with Marx's teachings as these had been embalmed in the English language through the kind offices of Charles Kerr and Co, publishers, Chicago, Ill.

But we did not make it. Craik was gone to Germany to escape retribution for his own folly. We were left without a Principal. Alex Robertson was persuaded to assume the mantle of Craik. He kept to his own branch of study. A miner from the Rhondda, Jack Jones,
miner from the Rhondda, Jack Jones, stepped in to carry on where Craik had left off.

The departure of Craik did not deeply affect the College, and we got through the first year with the help of some of the second year students. During the first term two important things happened - the Labour Party Conference took place in London, and the Labour Government was defeated on the Campbell Case. MacDonald was chairman that year. He opened the Conference, and he closed the Conference. Between his two speeches C.T. Cramp, a railwayman, conducted the conference proceedings. Will Lawther was a member of the N.E.C. of the Party at the time, and the ticket he gave me at the beginning of the affair enabled me to occupy a seat on the platform. One of the visitors to that strange conference was Karl Kautsky, an exceedingly old man who now and then sat close to me. It was the last open fight by the Communist Party for affiliation. Harry Pollitt and Saklatvala led the debate, and appealed over the head of Herbert Morrison. But all in vain. On the last day the conference listened with respect and attention to what Sir Patrick Hastings had to say about the Campbell affair. When MacDonald closed the conference there was still hope that the Liberals would relent. They did not. The first MacDonald Labour Government was blown away.

We came back to the College and settled in for the new term. A couple of weeks later Craik was gone. I did not meet up with him again until one day in 1935 when I went down to attend the demarkation of a Soviet ship at Hayes Wharf, which he, his wife and daughter had joined at Hamburg. He recognised me, greatly cheerful. I gave him Bob Ellis's address and left him to his fate, which proved to be most kind. He was not long in getting a niche somewhere in the fast growing B.B.C.

Today, as I look back upon those years of study in the College, and on the half century which has followed during which I have continued a close reading of the Marx corpus, I am convinced that few, so very few, have made any sustained attempt to come to terms with the author of Capital. No one, so far as I have discovered, has made an effort to study the man, has felt impelled to pronounce upon the magnetism of the man, and yet, it is something one cannot escape once one has broken the seven seals of Capital. Once this is done, the
fascination becomes enslavement. In the field of economy, despite all the mumblings of the micro-economists as well as the macro-economists, Marx stands as a giant. The brilliance of conjecture as well as analysis and the subsequent phrasing dazzle even the loiterer upon his pages. I was a mere youth come to some penitent form obsessed by a deeper hunger hunger than ever I had hitherto known for salvation, and yet doubtful of attaining a deep enough understanding. Marx is persuasive, even when what he writes is clothed in terms which must be taken apart and subjected to meticulous examination. There is always a cracking force in the simplest of his observations.

Marx never argued about God; he simply arraigned Him. Often, very often, the priest, and the arbitrations of the priest, come forth to be assessed by Marx. Today, I agree with him; yesterday I had to learn to understand. What I did squirm against was the irony of the man, his own particular Jewish irony, as inescapable as all Israel. It was always an immense relief to find him touched to a deeply concealed pity. That came when he accepted the simplicity of the simple men as they moved out of the magnificently cruel oppressions of the capitalist and pre-capitalist social arrangements and into the newer and more startlingly pitiless cruelties of an established pre-democratic period of capitalism. In the pages of Capital there is more concentrated human anger, more pity, and infinitely more understanding than there is in all the pages of political economy since the publication of The Wealth of Nations. What Marx appreciated as being innate, formidable and simply relevant in the capitalist process of production, Adam Smith and David Ricardo never discovered in all their work.

I did not realise at the time that my discovery of economics was as profound as was that moment when I actually became a member of the underworld of mining men. Both discoveries were shattering. In the College I passed out of a phase of ordinary, almost unintellectual life into one which held the imperative demands for understanding. It was almost as catastrophic as that day when I passed out of the still lingering habits of childhood into the actual existence of a man.

It occurred one morning after we had discovered the dam at the bottom of the drowned shaft at Wylam, when my father came to see how we were faring and
what progress we were making. After a careful examination of the place he expressed himself as satisfied.

"I'll go now," he said. "You chaps get on with the dam. The sooner it's busted the better." He turned to me. "You, Harold," he said, "can come with me and set me up the shaft."

I followed him into the air course and then we retraced our steps back to the Yard Seam. Arrived there, I saw him into the kibble and gave the signal of "men to ride", which was three distinct raps on the pit head hammer. My father strapped himself to the rope. I handed him the shaft stick. The shaft was silent. The enormous eye of the water glared up at us, unblinking, malevolent. Occasionally a stone loosened itself from the side of the shaft and dropped with a plop into the water. My father ready, I gave the hoist signal.

"You needn't go back empty handed," he said. "Take a couple of those planks back with you."

The kibble began to rise.

I stood on the wet gantry watching the kibble ascend. I stood there until the bogey was drawn over the aperture at the top, excluding most of the light of day, leaving me alone.

It was then that fear seized me. I was alone, a few feet above that most dreadful monster in the shaft. I had to turn and face the more malevolent monsters that lay between me, that prowled about the distance I was to travel, and the dam. I had to leave it there and go back to the dam. I think I moaned before I picked up the two planks of wood. Placing one under each arm I paused long enough to settle the clay bob holding my lighted candle between my fingers in such a fashion that the palm of my hand shielded the light of the candle against the wind. I marched fearfully into that maw of darkness. Each step I took burgeoned my fear. I was alone, terribly alone, in a mine that contained all my fears. Once or twice I stumbled over a piece of stone or a lump of coal. I went on and on and on into fear.

I came to the top of the drift. The road lost its black gloss and took on a white sheen, and made a fitting habitation for any ghost. I felt a scream rising in my throat, but I choked it back. Down the gradient I stumbled. The planks eased themselves of some of their weight as I plunged on. The gaunt
fingers of my fear squeezed into my flesh, my very being. I began to sob as I went on.

At the bottom of the drift I had to turn left and pass over a small barrier of stone. As I did so I lost hold of the plank in my right arm. It fell and knocked the candle out of my hand. The darkness fell over me. I sat down, alive with fear, at the mercy of all the phantoms that hid themselves in the everlasting darkness. I groped about for my piece of candle among the wet muck, and at last I found it. I had no matches upon me. They were in my coat pocket at the dam.

I tried to compose myself. I did not weep. I was too far gone in spiritual abjectness to do anything but clutch my loneliness against my palpitating heart. I was stupendously alone in that darkness which held all the fierceious fears of my existence as they had built up since I was born. I could only hope that nothing, nothing would assault me. It did not occur to me to try to feel my way through the darkness to where I could call for aid from my comrades. Had I done so I would have been compelled to carry my two planks with me. I sat still. There was nothing else that I could do but sit in that darkness which weighed down upon me.

My head drooped and I fell asleep.
I awoke.
A voice was calling my name along the passage. I opened my eyes and felt the dreadful shock of candle light, a long way off. And my fear fell from me like a cloak.

"Harold! Harold!"
I picked up my burden and started to walk forward. "Coming," I yelled.
"Where the hell have you been?" Dick demanded.
"I lost my light, and I had no matches," I explained.
I knew then that I had become a member of the fraternity of men who sought their livings beneath the fields.
I had become a miner.

Somehow I felt the same sensation of fulfilment when I came into the territory of Karl Marx. I offer no apology for this, for I am convinced that all mankind must come to terms with him. I offer no suggestion as to the manner
of that coming.

It is when one discovers Marx in a contemplative mood that one begins to assess his immense stature as a thinker. Watch him observing the social arrangements which men have produced over the illimitable acres of industrial creation, especially "the social production of ancient days....which are far simpler, enormously more easy to understand than bourgeois society". Follow him closely and attend to his explanations of such productive purposes "based upon the immaturity of the individual being (who has not yet severed the umbilical cord, which, under primitive conditions, unites the members of the human species one with another) or upon the direct relations of dominion and satisfaction".

This revelation brought its own shocks which were as impressive as my own individual experience with and within myself in that solitary pit in Wylam. It held me just as spellbound in delight as the other had held me so forlorn in loneliness.

I was free from all economic worries for at least two years. I was at liberty to make the most and the best of my studies. I could do that, or I could make a countenance of studying and idle my time among the social catacombs of the West End of London. It was impossible to escape the impact of this London. Not only was it shattering, it was new. So far as I was objectively aware, Earls Court had not yet learned how the other half contrived to gain a livelihood, and how it contrived at the sustenance of Earls Court. It was a place where people resided, not a place where people foregathered in order to live. It was a place wherein was exposed the insensitive privateness of existence. In the daytime Earls Court was deserted, smitten by a plague of achievement in other places. In the evening, its denizens clad themselves in raiment more appropriate to the charade than to the purposes of living. Pleasures were systematically sampled, pleasures unknown to me or my contemporaries of the coal measures, be they wanton or intellectual, be they moral or merely wrong. The contrast was at first almost paralysing, but it soon appeared ordinary and tawdry. We who had forsaken industrial turmoil for the time being had to turn to Marx if we were to discover some rationale for this contrast that was made so manifest. Even so, he did not provide us with all the answers.

As the years have passed and as I explored the literature that has con-
centrated on the working class ways and manners of life, Gissing and the lesser breed, I have found it difficult to understand how and why London made such an impact upon me. And yet it did. If one were to judge the London of the '20s and compare it with that which lies exposed on the pages of that splendid author, one must accept the fact that in the main it is merely a hell-hole under revision. Why must the contrast between riches and poverty be so stark?

The student of Marx can present his own reasons for the deplorable conditions with which he had to contend in order to sustain his importance as a writer on economics. It is, today, useless bemoaning the conditions which in the end prevented his bringing his work to its conclusion, and so giving mankind all the refinement of his thought. If only.... But was his entire work basic to the complete understanding of the capitalist mode of production, or does the capitalistic mode of production remain basic to the understanding of Karl Marx?

There was that moment when I came upon a reflection by Marx. Allow me to set it down:

"Whatever view we take of the masks in which the different personalities strut about the feudal stage, at any rate the social relations between individuals at work appear in their natural guise as personal relations, and are not dressed up as social relations between things, between the products of labour."

When I had successfully grappled with that flaming thought, I found myself compelled to refrain from further contemplation of my own lot. It explained the family that had bred me. I had been conditioned within the terms of their own lives' beappings. Their lives, their religion, their beliefs and their torturous assumptions were all securely anchored, and had always been so anchored, to a productive process that went into the make-up of the capitalist mode of production. The pity was that for them it was all embedded in an indubitably personal relation with God and His priests.

The Labour College had little to teach any of us. That is the conclusion at which I arrived along with many of my fellow students. Did we react to Marx, or did marxism simply sweep over us like a shower of rain? I believe that we had no other option but to allow it to do so. The fact was that the purveyors of the Labour College brand of Marxism-Dietgenism were not particularly well-schooled for their tasks. They broke off all our hitherto intellectual develop-
When I left South Shields at the end of the Christmas vacation, 1924, I took back with me my typewriter and the typescript of a novel I had toiled over for many months. When I got back I left the manuscript in the outer office of Herbert Jenkins Ltd. This firm had published a couple of novels by James C. Welsh, M.P. and it occurred to me that they might show some interest in what I had written. In due time it was returned to me with a longish letter in which they offered a reasoned excuse for not proceeding with publication.

A little dejected, I put the thing away among my clothes and tried to forget about it. I might have done so, but one morning I received a letter which bore the embossed address of the Embassy of the U.S.S.R. on the flap of the envelope. In my room I read the enclosed letter with mounting interest.

It read:

Dear Sir,

From a friend I have learned that you have written a novel dealing with mining life in the North. This novel might be of interest to readers in my country, so would you care to call at the Embassy at 3. p.m. on Thursday afternoon, and, if possible, bring the m.s. with you? I do hope that this will be convenient for you.

Yours sincerely,

Ivan Maisky.

Secretary to the Soviet Legation.

I was rooming with Horace Morgans, a miner from Cwmtwrch, a village in the Swansea Valley. Horace finished up with an M.A. degree at some Welsh university and became a schoolmaster. At that time he aimed at becoming a dramatist. If
he ever did become one the fact has escaped me. The last time I saw him was on the occasion of the Old Boy's of the Labour College annual dinner. This took place in the House of Commons dining room somewhere near the members' bar room. The meal was so bad that I refrained thereafter from any of the college jamborees. Nye Bevan was the star of the affair, and this, somehow, did not suit Will Lawther, who possessed a positive dislike for the member for Eddw Vale. Lawther told me that night of his impending knighthood.

Horace came with me to Sloane Square.

It was a most beautiful day. We sauntered from the station to the embassy. We paused awhile at the entrance to admire a huge photograph of a meeting which was being addressed by Lenin in Petrograd. Standing beneath Lenin was Leon Trotsky. I thought it was a magnificent photograph. I have often seen that same photograph since, but so doctored that Trotsky was completely removed from his stance.

We were ushered into Maisky's room. He asked us to be seated after we had introduced ourselves. This was the first time I had met the man. Indeed, prior to the receipt of that letter I was unaware of his existence. Small of stature, rotund, mustached, smiling, he was a most charming man. He spoke English well, although there were occasions when he had to search for the appropriate word.

I now think it would have been better had I gone alone, for he was most reluctant to engage me in conversation. He asked me if I had brought the typescript with me, and I forthwith handed over the parcel I had under my arm. He told me that he would read it and find out if he could recommend it to a Russian publisher. Did I agree to that course of action? he asked, and when I nodded he rose from his chair, came round the table, shook our hands and ushered us from the room.

I did ask him how he came to know of my book, but he merely smiled, and told me that a friend had suggested he should read it. Some time later I did learn that my good friend was Rochelle Townsend. She was then reading for Jenkins. Mrs Townsend had a comprehensive knowledge of the Russian language. She was friendly with Maisky. Later she became employed by the Russian Trade Delegation and held a comparatively important position until our friendship drifted away.

A publishing house in Leningrad, Priboi, agreed to publish the book on
Maisky's recommendation, and he accordingly handed the novel to a Madame Zina Vengerova-Minsky. She was a small, energetic, bronchitic person who had one passion, and one passion only, literature. She knew most of the European languages and had spent all her mature years doing translations for Russian publishing houses.

During the time she was busy on my novel I was often called to her home in Bloomsbury to elucidate some mining term or some north country cliché. It was in her house that I made the acquaintance of Mrs Townsend. A warm friendship sprang up between us, and this solidified after Phyllis Varndell and I were married.

The latter interesting event occurred at Brixton Register Office on 26th of March, 1926 a few weeks before the General Strike, and while I was still resident at the Labour College.

After a short weekend at a Thames side hotel near Maidenhead, I took my wife north to meet my family. She was not deeply impressed by the north country, but she did impress all the people she was introduced to. We made our way back to London for me to take the last term of my stay at the college.

The strike came and went, and a bleak future stretched away into the infinity for us both. We made the best of it, and in some way we enjoyed ourselves.

There was that occasion when the Minsky's suggested that we should undertake an excursion to Stoke Poges, and pay our respects to the shade of Thomas Grey. We all met at Earls Court station and from there we went to Hounslow. We caught a bus outside Hounslow station which took us to Slough. At the junction of the road going west and the one diverging to Eton there stood a hotel which offered us lunch. While we were seated Zina made a long study of the menu, of which Nicolai took no notice until she mentioned the word "salmon".

"Is it fresh salmon?" he asked the waitress.

She nodded. "And you have lettuce, much lettuce, nice lettuce?" he demanded of her, and when she had indicated that there was such a possibility of supply, he said to her: "Bring it in some abundance, please. Lettuce, tomatoes, salmon, onion, oil, vinegar, and much mustard."

When the girl had gone he smiled beatifically upon us. "When she bring it all I will make you a salad just like Peter Kropotkin showed me how to make."
No man could make salad like Peter....no man in all Russia. Peter was my friend."

Zina leaned towards me. "Peter and Nicky were inseparable friends," she told me. "Now Kola will surprise you."

We watched the old man prepare his salad, the basis of which was a copious dollop of mustard. His salad, prepared with such meticulous care on that small table, became a blissful luncheon.

We walked to Stoke Poges, and made our obeisances to the ghost that still haunts the churchyard. Kola signed the book that lay on a table in the church. As I watched him I felt envious of his small, beautiful handwriting. He must have produced a lovely manuscript.

The day remained beautiful all the way back to London.

But to the book. It was published in Leningrad and carried a warm preface by Ivan Maisky. The publishers honoured their agreement and I received sufficient valuta to enable me to get married and furnish our home at Cleadon, South Shields. Some years later the book was published in a mass edition, of a half a million copies, not in book form, but in the format of a magazine. By then Maisky was the Russian ambassador to Finland, and when I drew his attention to the fact of the new edition, he demanded of the publishers that the agreement be honoured. It was, in part, and I made no further attempt to obtain the rest of the 'honorarium'.

I did not learn how much Zima received for the translation of the novel. She once told me that if she went back to the Soviet Union she would be a millionaire in roubles. In all probability she had to live on the salary she obtained from the Trade Delagation and the Embassy, and that all her earnings from her literary activities were kept for her in Russia. When I suggested that they should both go back to Russia they both shuddered. Never, she said. Nicky merely smiled.

Nicky's real name was Nicolai Maximovitch Vilenkin. His pseudonym was 'M. Minsky'. He was a considerable pre-revolutionary poet. When I first met him he was writing a vast 'philosophy'. I believe that he completed it before he died. Rochelle Townsend did begin to translate it, but in all probability she discontinued her task after the old man's ashes came to rest in Pere L-
The scholarship terminated at the end of July, 1926, and I left Penywern Road to those students who had still another year in which to study and to serve. Morgan Phillips was one of the incoming students, but I never met him personally, nor did I ever hold a conversation with him during the years that remained to him.

The college hobbled along as an educational establishment until 1931, and then it was closed down and the lease disposed of by the two trade unions.

The miners strike continued under the effervescent leadership of Arthur J. Cook, but by the end of the year it began to founder into disaster. The first crack in the façade appeared in Nottinghamshire, and from that moment the militancy of the men began to fade away. A strike becomes useless when it is seen to lose its basis of power. One by one the local leadership sought accommodation with the local coal owners, and the coal industry began to stir to life. But, as an industry, it was never to be the same again.

I left Phyllis in London after the break appeared to grow wider, and I went back to Harton. There I found the county in a deplorable condition. Harton was still holding out, but it was soon apparent that it was teetering on the edge of defeat. So, too, were Marsden and Boldon. St. Hilda had broken, and the men were struggling between the desire to work and the disinclination to act traitorously to their fellow miners. The argument in the town was, to say the least, vociferous. It became even louder over the New Year holiday, and then the strike was called off. Meetings were held. Recriminations continued. The men staggered back to work and staggered home again, each carrying a lump of coal, a forbidden theft, in all conscience. No pen that I knew could, had it
Mining could not be presumed to be normal until the major happenings had been dealt with. When the hands and the bodies of the men had become "hardened" the work within the mine, as soon as the ventilatory tract was in some way functioning adequately, began to gather speed, and soon all the miners that were needed were able to return to their old ways of life below ground.

It was March, 1927 before I got permission to start again in the pit.

The town of South Shields sits perennially in the track of the nor'easters. One was tearing viciously through the treeless waste of low dwellings of all the town when I set off to walk the length of Stanhope Road to Harton Colliery. I walked alone right to the lamp cabin. Nothing had changed, not even the smell of the place. I was fulfilling my promise to return to the pit. Now I was back, right back in the world of hob-nailed boots, coarse yarn stockings, heavy flannel shirts, old cast-off clothing, a huge tin water bottle slung on my shoulder and a packet of sandwiches in my pocket, wrapped up in newspaper. During my two years in London I had had to have my eyes tested and my vision rectified, which was not fully stereoscopic. Now I was without my spectacles, and somehow naked. The further I trudged on my way the deeper became my reluctance to continue. My despair deepened. I swallowed it and went on.

I was given a lamp and passed into the waiting room. They had discontinued the testing of the lamps. I read the barometer and walked on to the pit head. I was desolated. The warmth and the stench and the foulness. It was like the stench of the abattoir. I took my bunch of tokens, hung them on my belt, and walked down to the bottom cage. I stood watching the process. The cage filled with humanity and the gates were closed upon it. The clanging of bells, a little upward lift and then the slithering of the monstrous thing into the darkness and the vapours of the shaft. The other cage slid into view and I walked into it. Holding my lamp in one hand, my other hand sought and found the rail running along the roof of the cage. This I clenched and then I laid my head against my forearm. We left the cage and went into the narrow passage and made ourselves known to the overmen. I knew exactly where I was to go.

The Second North.

I came upon the drift, running from the Bensham to the Rutton, I joined
the group that was going the way I was going. When we had all foregathered we went on to the stables and took our ponies. We led the poor little beasts from the stables, across the engine plane and into the travelling way, and sent them on into the darkness unguided. Beyond the last trap door we discarded all our clothes except our short pants, boots and stockings, and waistcoats. Then we went on in the time honoured Indian file.

As we plunged along the travelling way I became instinctively aware that there was something wrong with the atmosphere. Nothing was happening to encourage my further speculation, but I grew alerted to some danger. The pit did not smell right. It did not feel right. The air was much too warm even for a return airway. The flow of the air was distinctly loose. It was extraordinarily "slack" — to use a miner's term. No movement was perceptible. Everything was still, uncomfortably suppressed, distinctively oppressive. I became uneasy.

Halfway to the district in which we were to work we took a rest. Further along into the darkness the ponies stood still. I noticed that none of my comrades sat down, instead, practically naked, they lay down in the thick dust and rested their heads in the cups made by their open palms. None of them offered a remark, which was unusual. I cogitated the predicament I was in. I did not feel frightened, but I was disturbed, oppressed by the feeling that we were not safe. I made up my mind to expect a better flow of air when we got out of this return, for I knew that we would be working forward from the landing at the end of the engine plane.

After a while we got up and went on our journey, and in time we arrived at the deputy's kist, and there we squatted.

The air was almost as slack at the kist as it had been in the return. When the deputy came from his examination of the faces he offered us lots for the "goings" along which we would drag the filled coal tubs. This done, we took each an appropriate pony and went about our tasks. The shift of men we had replaced went home. The lack of air was apparent at the kist. When I got to the face I found that there it was even worse. My pony was soon drenched with its own sweat. In the faces most of the hewers were naked to the tops of their stockings. All were drenched with a wet mucous of sweat and coal dust. A heavy inertia lay upon every one of us, man, youth, pony. As the shift wore on an
agony lay upon all our flesh, sublimely, almost exquisitely.

By the end of the shift I was almost exhausted. I started out from the flat with my pony and my companions. I tried to walk manfully. I did try to keep in file, but soon there was no file for me to keep in. I was alone. They could not wait for me. I was sufficiently pit-wise to know my way out of the travelling way. The pony slackened his pace in order to share the light from my lamp, whose glass was almost smudged over with dust. He led me home unerringly. We came to the place where I could pick up my clothes. I dressed slowly. My aching flesh almost rejected the coarse flannel of my shirt. Dressed at last I opened the trap door and passed into the fresher air of the drift bottom. We crossed the plane and I delivered the little thing to the horsekeeper. I walked up the incline of the drift.

I had not gone forty yards when I began to feel a strange discomfort. I sat down to endeavour to conjure some comfort into my strange physical condition. I put my lamp in a safe place, sat down, and began to fall into a swoon. How long my half awake condition lasted I cannot tell. Something had happened..... but what? I had never felt like this before. I just had to sit and let happen just what had to happen. At last the pent up displeasure of my body found vent and I vomitted as I had not vomitted in all my life.

When I had regained composure of a sort, I drank the horribly warm water from my tin bottle. I forced myself to drink the torrid stuff. Afterwards I gained some slight renewal of my strength and I got to my feet to continue my climb the drift. Slowly, painfully I plodded upwards. Before I reached the top of the drift my nausea returned and again I passed through the agonies of my body trying to expel that which was not there. After vomitting, I took a long rest before essaying the rest of my slow climb. The electric bulbs at the top glared a bluish-white pain right into my eyes.

Here the air was cold and I became somewhat refreshed. I knew that my sufferings were all on account of the bad ventilation. My lungs had breathed an atmosphere for nine hours that no Gissing had ever experienced and which no Gissing could describe. As I sat there, drinking in the cold, cold air I became aware of a sustained buzzing noise. To my astonishment, the noise became recognisable as that of a suction fan in full blast. A suction fan inside a coal
mine! I was astounded, and yet I was much too discomposed to cogitate on so unusual a phenomenon. When I left the direct aircourse and re-entered the return which would take me to the shaft bottom I was again assailed by nausea, but this passed after a couple of vain retchings. I came at last to the shaft bottom where the "waiter-on" recognised me.

"That you, Harold?" he asked.

"Aye, First shift," I replied. "Takes a bit getting used to after two years."

"Your shift rode two hours ago," he observed. He lurched a bit on the top of his own kirt. "Couldn't you have found a better place than this to work in, in London?"

"Should I have done?" I countered.

"I should bloody well think so," he cried. "What made you think about coming to this place again after you'd got free?"

"I promised to come back, didn't I?" I said. "I gave my promise to the lodge before I went to College."

"That was long ago! Long ago!" he shouted. "A long bloody time ago!"

"Do you think the Harton lodge would have given me a quid a week out of the funds if they'd thought for one moment I wouldn't come back?" I demanded. "They gave you a quid a week?" He was surprised.

"They gave me a hundred and two quid for my own little promise," I said. "Wasn't it a bargain? A good bargain?"

"Pie crusts, Jad!" he said loudly. "Why, yer bugger o' hell's flames! Do you think anybody've minded if you hadn't come back?"

"Well, I have come back," I said, "so let me get to bank."

I rode the shaft alone.

By the fire I bathed myself in the time worn manner of the mining home. I ate nothing. I put out the gas light and went upstairs to bed.

When I awoke the buzzer had gone for the shift I should have joined.

The shift after that I went back to the pit and once again I laboured in that airless district. All the time I pondered on that suction fan, but I did not express my fears to anybody. I was convinced that even with the aid of that fan the ventilatory tract was not functioning as it ought to function. I would have to make my mind up about it all later.
We furnished our little home with the fragile furniture of love and hope and poverty, and we shaped our lives within the conditions imposed by an urban assembly lingering on the edge of the collapse of a manually produced coal industry. It was difficult for us both as we struggled through those arduous days which added up to the year 1927. We were happy and alone in that northern country setting which must have been torture for my wife, for she must have felt it more deeply than I did to be estranged from the immense social forest that was London and imprisoned in a down-at-heel borough like South Shields. We felt that there was no escape for either of us.

My father and his wife came to see us one beautiful Saturday afternoon in the summer of our year. They refreshed themselves at our table, and later we walked them to edge of the cliffs at Marsden Rook and back to South Shields where they took the train to Newcastle. Neither of them entered my home again.

As I walked with my father behind my wife and my step-mother I told him of my fears for the colliery. This was the first time I had openly brooded on the subject. At that time I was working in a fresh cavel, but in the same Hutton seam. My father listened with his old avidity and enthusiasm to descriptions of the underworld.

"What's the height o' the seam?" he asked me.

I knew that he was somewhat impressed by my fears. "It varies," I said. "It's anything from six or seven feet to fifteen."

At that he stood in his tracks. "Say that again," he commanded. "Thou's joking, surely!"

I repeated what I had told him.

"It's just not possible," he breathed.
"But it is actual," I cried. "You should see it. It's marvellous."

"Then just what are you worried about?" he asked me.

I could see that all his mining instincts were aroused. He did not press me. He just waited.

"The strike didn't do the industry much good," I told him. "And what is more it's done that pit of ours a great deal of harm. It certainly has not improved conditions underground."

He cracked out a sharp, sneering guffaw which I might have taken for a laugh, but I knew it was not a laugh. "You can say that again," he said. He dropped into his native dialect. "Thou abune all of us didn't need to be telt that," he said, "but it pleases me to hear thou say it. Thou dissent think that that foul A.J. Cook was sure he was gonna do the pits a lot o' good when he had y'all out on strike to starve."

"I'm not interested in your side of the politics of the strike, Dad," I told him.

"Then, just what is thou interested in?" he cried.

"The effects," I said. But just then a large ship was edging its way out of the harbour between the two piers. We both stood and watched it. When it had got itself clear, I said to him, "They've got a fan in the pit."

"They have what?" he shouted.

Sarah, my step-mother heard and looked back somewhat anxiously. He waved her on. "Can on," he shouted. "We're only talking."

I told him about the fan, and when I had finished he said to me, anxiously, I thought: "And is the district thou's in covered by this fan?"

I nodded.

"How far inbye?"

"Couple o' miles about."

"What's the air like?"

"Slack," I said. "That's what worries me. I can get a fair sized gas cap anywhere in the flat where I'm working. I've never tested in the face. Better not to."

I heard his sharp intake of breath. "How much?" he demanded. "More than two an' a half per cent."
"The Mines Act's no better than all other acts," he continued. "There's a road through the lot." And with that he paused on the top of the cliff which we were to descend in order to get on to the cement "promenade" to survey the lovely beach that ran to the pier and then beyond to touch the waters of the Tyne. "The trouble wi' most men," he said, "is that they take everything for granted. They never read. So, for them, hist'ry is only summat inside unread books. Did you ever hear of a man who lived in these parts, called James Mather?"

I shook my head.

"There! See!" His reverence changed swiftly into triumph. "See you pier. The near one. Whee do ye think built that? It had to be built. It didn't just grow out o' the sands. It was James Mather what did it."

"Where did he come from?" I asked.

"Shields, o' course. My grandfather knew him. He told me about the man. But Mather did more'n that. He worked on ventilating the pits."

I can see him now, a bright-eyed, woefully undersized man, a typical product of a civilisation taught to hew coal. It is my fondest remembrance of him. In that lovely sunshine he stood revealed before me, not only as a man of the pits, but as my father.

"Remember that day I took thou into Bitchburn an' thou became interested in a roll o' brattice cloth thou was sitting on?" he asked, and when I had nodded, he went on. "Brattice cloth was something added by men to help them overcome their own difficulties," he informed me.

"How?" I asked.

"In the beginning, all the pits, if they were ventilated at all, were ventilated by a furnace, like the one we had at Bitchburn. But in them days there was only one way in to any mine. That being so, how does thou think the fresh air got in and the bad air got out?" He did not wait. "I'll tell thou. It was George Stephenson what discovered it. The rising warm air bratticed itself off naturally against the fresh air that had to fill the vacuum." He grinned at me. "George Stephenson was the man that defined the natural brattice," he said.

I overcome my surprise. "You mean the cold air came down one side of the shaft and the
shaft and the warm air went up the other side?" I cried incredulously.

"Zackly," he said. "George Stephenson, the man that gave us the railway, the man free Wylam, was the man that discovered the "natural brattice"."

"I never knew that," I said. "But what about Mather? What did he discover?"

He shook his head. "Thou hasn't changed a bit since thou was a bairn," he said to me. "Thou's more an unbeliever than thou is an empiricist," he went on. I smiled at his bit of Hibbert Journal witticism. "James Mather made the next big discovery. Until he proved it, every mining engineer and scientist believed that the more you stoked the furnace at the bottom of the shaft, the hotter you got it, the greater would be the flow of the rising hot air in the shaft. Everybody believed that until Mather showed them they were wrong, an' that there was a furnace limit. So everybody got shocked."

I had no riposte to make, and so I waited.

"So they had to find a fresh way to take the air into and out of a pit," he said. Mather was working with a chap called Godsworthy Gurney, and between them they tried to introduce a steam-jet method. This," he went on, "was overtaken by the rotary fan, and here we are. It's taken us ower a hundred years to get to the simple rotating fan, and it would appear that it is not as good as it was."

I had nothing to offer to his off-the-pulpit discourse.

"But all that's just as maybe," he said, "but we need not discuss that this fine day. It's Harton I want to talk about. It's that fan in the pit that interests me. Up to now we've all believed that the more powerful the fan the greater must be the volume and speed of the air that it draws. But, surely, thou can see that the assumption is made to rest on the fan and not on the air course. Everybody knows that air passing through a continuously confined space experiences drag as is made by its passing against the sides, especially in a pit. Surely, increased power increases the drag. You canna widen a shaft to increase the area of the draught, now can you? Surely there's a limit to a draught even when it's drawn mechanically. Take your pit. That fan installed downstairs can only steel from the existing air current. It canna bring any air down from above, now can it? If it increases the pull down the shaft it canna boost the push up the upcast. All you fan is doing is robbing poor auld Peter to pay poor auld Paul."
enthusiastically within the communist controlled Minority Movement, a political
departure that held the trade union movement captive for some time, but was
now beginning to fade away. But, overall, I had become conscious of a deep
aversion to the mines, and utterly out of commendation of the increasing in-
tensity of the productive process. I could have gone to my father and asked
him for a job, or to my brother, who was of some importance in another coal
complex, but I did not for I knew that I would embarrass them.

It was painful to be lost and alone in the land that had fostered my being.
We came back to London.

Phyllis' mother had been alone with her two daughters for most of her
married life. Consequently I was little more than an intruder in their little
home in Princes Square, S.E.11. (Today that square is known as Cleaver Square,
and it now lies in the gift of those who can afford to buy or pay for the
leaseholds of the down-at-heel houses that were condemned in 1925 by the
London County Council and scheduled for demolition)

One of the thirteen children of a farm labourer and his wife who fared
ill on the fields that lie beautifully spread on the slopes of the Blackdown
Hills, she had made her way to London and had "gone into service". She had
married a Southwark cockney who had been in the same infantry platoon as her
brother, and was present when the lad was killed somewhere in the South Afri-
can War. After the birth of her third child - which died - the father had
failed in his conjugal duties and the marriage had drifted into a slow dissol-
ution. Undaunted, the stubborn lady had gone into the landlady business, and
by the time I came on the scene she was possessed of the freehold of the house
in Princes Square.

Somehow we squeezed ourselves and our furniture into that little house.
My first object was to get a job. I duly reported at the Employment Exchange
in Walworth Road. Phyllis, too, looked out for a job, and was successful. I
had some time to wait. It was not a happy employment which I secured. The
work was in the smoked bacon department of David Craig and Co, near to the
Old Vic. Into the yard each morning trundled two huge horse-drawn drays laden
with newly cured sides of bacon packed in sacking, four sides to the pack.
These we off-loaded and carried on our shoulders into the smoking chambers,
huge affairs devoted to the hanging of the sides of bacon within a wreak of smoke obtained by burning masses of sawdust on the floor below. My duty was to help lift each sack on to a table, cut away the sacking, watch the foreman sprinkle the inner part of the flesh with some kind of meal, and help in the hoisting to the hanging rods some twelve feet above.

For the better part of the day we prepared the kiln, and at the end of the day we closed the great doors and left the smoke to do its own work. We had always plenty to do about the yard. The other kiln had to be emptied and the vans loaded for the drivers to take to the many shops scattered about London. The kiln which we had emptied had then to be made ready for the next day's smoking.

This job lasted until Whitsuntide. I suppose I was discharged because the cockney desire for commendable smoked ham and bacon had slackened off. I was not sorry to 'take my cards'. I was not unemployed very long when I found employment in the engineering works of Messrs Waygood-Otis Ltd, near the Elephant and Castle. The continuously moving stairway had just arrived in the metropolis, and the American firm was by then fully organised to meet and supply the demand of the Underground and the large shops for this kind of simple transportation. As a result, work went on continuously round the clock.

It was the noisiest factory I ever experienced. Built over an area much larger than a football pitch, the organisation within was impressive. Down the centre of the main shop were the milling and drilling banks of machines, all devoted to the production of parts to decisive measurements. Here the raw castings were shaped and ornamented into beautiful elements of the ultimate machinery. The idea of individual powering of the machines had not then been established, and, consequently, each machine was powered by a belt passing over the machine and round the great wheels attached to the spindle that ran above along the entire length of the bank. The power was 'thrown off' when the mechanic switched a wooden lever which disengaged the belt, but left it spinning and flapping until it was re-engaged.

There was no pause, no curtailing of the whirling wheels. They spun. The belts flapped. The machines groaned and ground and screamed in all their own distinctive, irrepressible and distressful agonies. Noises thumped out a
any time helping the operator of the multiple driller meant that as soon as I was released I would have a long job sweeping up the shop. The trips outside, however, even in the winter, were happy interludes of peace.

Despite it all, I was happy, for I was making a contribution to the peace of our family life. We had our hours of great tranquility. The stark gospel of political change was laid aside. We pursued the sunlight when we could. One of our favourite escapes was the trip from Epsom to Box Hill, which we made on foot. There were others, too, all made on foot, over the common and through Richmond Park, and the breathtaking view of the Thames from above the town.

The top floor flat of our little house in those days had quite a good rating as a home for any married, or unmarried, couple. It overlooked what once had been a most pleasant square. Despite the intrusion of the petty bourgeoisie the square is still large within the squalid compression of south east London. Today, the actual square has become a standage for cars. During all the working day both sides of the road, right round the lime trees, go to make up a free car park for those who invade Kennington for their livings.

The small flat came to be occupied by a couple, Dick and Moira Beech. Dick, who bore a striking resemblance to Mr. de Valera, was a Yorkshireman from Hull. He spoke the dialect without shame. Until he met Moira Connolly he had roamed the world. His purpose, politically, had long been squandered, and now he was anxious to lead the proletariat to its "last fight", which he was convinced it had to face. His travels had brought him to the lee of the home of James Connolly, from which hide-out he captured the ginger-haired Moira and carried her off to London as soon as she had passed through medical training. Before settling down to life with Moira he had broken the iron ring with which the allies had encircled the young Soviet state, and had made his way, almost on foot, from Murmansk to Petrograd, where he had made himself known to Lenin and to Trotsky. He became a founder member of the Communist International, and he carried the medalion, that was struck to commemorate its inauguration, on his watch chain, very proudly. When I first made his acquaintance he was in the employ of R.O.P.. Later he was

\[ \text{R.O.P. Russian Oil Products} \]
transferred to the offices of Anglo-Shipping, in Bush House. When the soviet gentlemen who employed him insisted upon the loading of the S.S. Karl Marx by blackleg labour at a wharf in Port of London, and succeeded, his protests were so vociferous that they gave him the ukase: shut up or get out! Unfortunately for Dick there came a time when the clerks in Anglo-Shipping walked out in protest against something in the office. Dick was not affected, but he did become affected when the said gentlemen requested him to work in the 'black' office.

I can hear him now, telling me his story. "What? You are asking me to blackleg! Me! You mean me! Me to blackleg! Me!" he said between his teeth. "But you can't blackleg when you work for the Soviet Union, Mr. Beech," one of them informed him. And Dick simply said, "Go to hell!"

Before that happened, Moira became pregnant. Being the daughter of James Connolly, this was some event. Being a medical practitioner, she marched through her dolorous nine months without fear. Her return to the square with her babe was another thing. She must have help from her sister Fiona. And, as Fiona was afraid to travel alone, Mrs Connolly had to convoy her from Dublin to Kennington.

Phyllis mother and Mrs Connolly joined together to administer to the needs of Moira and her daughter as women have done throughout time "who have been through it". Over the days the two women became confidants, as women do, of those intimate things that are not secrets among women. They were akin in soul, proletarian kin. Before each other they opened all the packages that contained all their great sorrows. They talked about the infidelity of Mum's husband and they talked about the death of James Connolly.

"I wouldn't say that Jim was wrong when he went to lead the rebellion," Mrs Connolly told her new friend. "No, I wouldn't say that at all. Jim groaned so deeply over the disgraceful oppression of Ireland... an' you know what it's like when a man gets politics real bad, Mrs Varndell."

I can see Mum nod. She could listen better than any woman I ever met. When you told her a story which held her interest she not only listened, but she repeated every word with her soundless lips.
"The doctor was kind to him in prison," she went on. "When I got to know
his name I went to see him. I asked him if he thought they would execute
him, an' he said he didn't think so, for, as he said, Jim was too bad wounded
as it was. "No, they won't do that, Mrs Connolly," said to me. "The man's too
wounded as it is. Why! I'm not at all sure that he will pull through all the
trouble he's in now." He smiled when he said it. He patted me hands, both of th
them." She held her hands on her lap, patting each one in turn by the other,
just as the man had done. "He comforted me, he did. 'You believe me, Mrs
Connolly,' he said to me. 'They never execute a wounded man. Before they do
they must get him better before they can do it proper. Jim has a good chance.
It's probably better he is wounded, for by the time he's recovered the anguish
will've passed from the souls of the English.'"

There was a long silence before she spoke again.

"And with that comfort in me heart I went back home to attend to the wants
of the childer," she said. "They were all helpless in their own anxieties for
their father; you see. An' I was a bit encouraged, even though I knew that
Jim had done a great wrong in the eyes of the English." She paused, as if she
was trying to break through the barrier of her own grief. "But none of us need
to have been," she said. "Ye see, they didn't let him get better at all. They
took my Jim an' fastned him in a sitting position, and they carried him out
an' put him, ill as he was, afore firing squad, and they shot him. They
shot him.....my Jim..."

There was yet another pause and then she spoke. "You see, I just didn't
take it all in," she said. "The doctor came to see me. I never saw a man so
angry. He told me what they had done. He told me that they never consulted
him about what they were going to do. They did it all in secret. He said
that he would have done all he could to stop it." She shook her head, he'beaut:
beautiful old head. Her face became wrinkled with the savage pain all over
again. "But it would not have happened to matter," she said. "They would have
shot him later. In their cruelty they saved my Jim a deal o' pain."

A few days later she was gone back to Dublin.

Dick and Moira found a larger flat in the Brixton Road and went there to
follow the tracks of their own lives. Both are dead now.

They had four children. Their one boy they called Dick. They prospered after Dick took the plunge to found a paper which he called, The Small Trader. He held on to his membership of the Communist Party until the 'King Street bunch', as Bob Ellis always designated them, expelled him.

Bob was the greatest friend I ever had. His family originated in Pembrokeshire. He died in that county. We first met at college functions. He had been to the college with the group which held Aneurin Bevan. When Bob was a child his father migrated to the Rhondda, and there worked as a miner. Bob grew up in the great militant period of the South Wales miners, the period when Noah Ablett was the John the Baptist of the left wing, and Dai Lloyd Jones was the flame triumphant over all the Rhondda Valley. Those must have been boisterous times. The mining clan in South Wales still drinks the mead of those trenchant years. Poor Dai! The orator in both the languages! When poverty and unemployment swept him out of the coalfield he came to rest in Brixton, as a milkman. When Dai Lilloyd and Tom Mann met there was no place in the enjoyment for any smaller man in the communist movement.

When I renewed Bob's acquaintance he was living in Camden Town. He was editing the Minority Movement weekly journal, The Worker from a little office in one of the buildings on the projection of the two streets that conjoin at Kings Cross. During any of the periods of my unemployment, holidays, and free weekends I went there to lend him a hand with the paper. I did book reviews and wrote articles on the mining scene, and some times a short story. I enjoyed going to the office and helping to sub-edit the paper. Bob always brought a large parcel of brown bread, butter and cheese sandwiches. He was an enthusiastic drinker of tea. We made gallons of the stuff. We were often joined in our feasts by Krishna Menon. How we ate. How we talked.

Krishna Menon in those days was a lonely Indian who existed in the most meagre circumstances. He always came to the office in the hopes of refreshing himself. How he existed he did not trouble to tell us, and we did not ask. We took him for granted, a charming, harmless Indian. He did not trade textiles like many of his compatriots. If he did, he did not tell us. He wore quite threadbare clothes and down at heel shoes. He carried a torn satchel. Where
he went to when he left the office was his own business.

Bob and I were both delighted when we learned that he had gained his own rightful place as India's representative at the League of Nations, for we knew that he would be an acquisition to the gentlemen who foregathered there. There came the day when he became a cabinet minister. I grieved when I learned of his fall from grace. He may yet arise.

It was while I was working at Waygood's that Harold Shaylor, who at that time was London editor and manager for Brentano's Ltd, offered to publish a novel which I had asked Phyllis to take to his office on her way to work. I became wildly excited at the prospect of publication. I had worked a long time on the story. Shaylor thought the title, The Gate of a Strange Field, which I had given it eminently suitable. It was while I was writing the novel that I read H.G. Wells' novel, Meanwhile and came across the sentence in which he catechised the General Council of the Trade Union Congress, as being "like sheep at the gate of a strange field."

Publication, I anticipated, might be a break-through for me. Shaylor held out high hopes of success, and these were enhanced when Appleton's took it for publication in New York. Unfortunately for me, the novel fell with an enormous, but silent thud, in both countries. I had anticipated the applause, and I was rewarded with silence, a silence that reminded me of most of the places in a mine.

To my surprise, Shaylor was by no means discomfitted by the failure of my novel, and asked me to get on with another. I offered him the manuscript of the novel which had been published in Russia, but he rejected the idea, preferring, as he said, one written outside and away from the mines. One could not make one's fortune writing about coal pits, he told me. I had already cogitated a novel, and I set out to write it. Before Shaylor could publish the new novel, Journey Beyond, Brentano's liquidated all their commitments in London, and Harold Shaylor Ltd took on from there. Although the novel received a sympathetic review on the B.B.C. book programme, by Duff Cooper, it too sank without trace.

In Helsinki, Maisky was quite excited and sent for both novels. On his recommendation the Moscow house, Zemlya i Fabrika (Fields and Factories) undertook the translations and published both novels. Both were quite widely discussed and caused much interest in Russia, as I found out when I got there.
out-throat. I felt profoundly sorry for him, for he deserved a better fate than the one King Street handed out to him. His immense intellectual ability was recognised throughout the world. He even debated with George Lucas on the subject of Walter Scott, and won the argument. He was kept away from all the flesh pots that were boiling in King Street. When Trotsky thrust out his tongue and called the burgeoning Stalin brigade "a host of Thermidorians" it was left to poor Tommy Jackson to tell the communist world who the Thermidorians were. He was the spiritual father of all the hippies of this day and generation, but he trundled his lean frame and flew his long hair over the communist field. His virile pen was always at the ready. Ribaldry of the most hilarious clung to his tongue. Oratory that was almost as magnificent as that of Edmund Burke was his for the speaking. And yet he was left to hunger for the bread he could not earn, and to thirst for the admiration that was rarely granted. He strode all the pavements of London with the intentness of George Cissing, often unwashed, always undignified, curiously unaware of his forlorn appearance. His was a brilliant mind. Perhaps I ought not to mind because it was my fate to be so often castigated by him.

Before any reviews of Journey Beyond could come to hand, Bob Ellis and I were on our way to Leningrad.
"Then what do I do?" I asked.

"First, you must get hold of a copy of our novel," she told me. She always called her translation 'our novel'. "It will be on the stalls. Take it to Zamyatin and tell him that I would like him to read it, and then see about giving it a good push. He will do it. We have always been the greatest of friends."

Before I left her, when we were in the street, she told me that under no circumstance whatever must I write to her in the usual way. "All you will do is send what you have to tell me on a picture post card. No other way is permissible," she informed me.

On the day prior to my departure on the Sibier, the parcel arrived at Princes Square, and this I stowed away in my luggage.

Bob was aboard the vessel when I arrived at Hays Wharf. She lay close up to London Bridge. A Polish boat was at the quay unloading a cargo of butter and cheese. There was the usual clatter of cranes and a great deal of shouting. The purser received me and showed me to a second class cabin. He then conducted me to the dining room and handed me over to the immigration officials. I handed over my passport, answered their questions and went back to the cabin.

Bob was lying, fully dressed, on his bunk. There were four in the cabin.

"Get here, then," he said. "Take that bunk. We might get full up before we sail."

The night became dark.

The next morning we went up on deck for a breath of air and found that we were at sea. The pilot had been dropped at the Sunk Lightship. It was quite dull. A scudding rain swept over the vessel. We went down for breakfast, where we found two other passengers, both American engineers. We made friends. From that moment we settled down to boredom. Luckily I had Eckermann's book on Goethe.

The unsettled weather continued until we got through the Heligoland Bight, when it changed and we had glorious autumnal weather all the way to Leningrad. We became mildly excited once we had passed through what appeared to
me to be a most primitive sluice and into the Kiel Canal. We made a slow journey through the canal in beautiful sunshine. From the top deck there was much to see that was interesting. The immense length of the waterway, its comparative narrowness, and the flat, wet green of the level countryside added up to something that was most impressive. A prudent husbandry tended all that we could see. The rainproofs covering the browsing cattle intimated a care for animals that was foreign to British farming practices. The bridges that spanned the canal above the masts of the ships fitted into a scene that never forgot to charm. The population must have been otherwise engaged when we passed through, for we rarely saw a human figure. Sometimes a cowbell jangled oddly and a dog barked somewhere in the distance. One felt that one was intruding upon a scene sacred to Wordsworth.

Out in the Baltic the world with its sea and its sky offered us an unforgettable journey. The very waters appeared to be under duress, and so, unmindful of ship and men. The sun held aloft its light all day. The waters glistened with tears in rare beauty. Throughout the night the sea sank into dreams and gave grant to loneliness to eyesdrop on the souls of sleeping men. All things, even the ship, were enveloped in the soft foldings of a deep silence, a deep abounding stillness which absorbed and rendered mute the swishings of the ship's wake. The tremendous stillness and the beauty of the moonless heavens in their embroidery of stars hovered over the ship, as if to comfort it as it transgressed the peace of a sleeping world. Were I to forget all things that have come to delight me except one I would be content to hold on to the memory of that voyage from Kiel to Leningrad. Summer was drifting into the past experience of the earth and was whispering to the snows and the winds. One could almost feel the pulse of time as one leaned over the ship's rail and drank in the silence that attends the rest of the seasons.

After two or three days there came the excitement. Leningrad in the morning. A newer wind rose to brush its hand over the water that filled the delta upon which the city of Leningrad is built. As we approached, the city seemed to withdraw itself and become shy. Viewed from the top deck it appeared to be scattered over too much water. The distant buildings peeped shyly over the edges of the waters. It seemed to be a place of great peace.
We had picked up a few passengers at Kiel, and they must have been quite privileged persons, for Bob, the Americans and myself were the last to go through customs. The ship had drawn up by a landing stage that stood out stark from the waters, or so it appeared to us, and upon this we had to stay until we called in to the office by a uniformed man. I was the last to be called in. The wind blew cold about me as I sat out in the open sky on an open boarded platform through which I could see the water. It was a most inhospitable place for anybody to lodge even for a few minutes.

There might have been some mistake in the shepherding process, for when I was brought in out of the cold I was greeted warmly. I heard one of the men mutter, "Heslop. Pod Vlastyu Uglya." They gave my baggage a quick glance and passed me into the care of an Intourist guide.

We arrived in Leningrad in September, 1930.

We were taken to the Hotel Europa and lodged in a vast room along with the two American engineers. We had breakfast with them on the following day, and we did not see them again. They must have been whisked off to some engineering project.

After a wash and brush up we went down by the lift to the entrance hall, there to await the pleasure of our guide, who was to take us to dinner. While we stood I noted the bookstall, and there, sure enough, lay a copy of "our book". I bought it for something like two shillings and stuffed it into my pocket. It was while I was doing this that I heard a voice say:

"Bob! Why would you believe it? And Harold Heslop, too! What the hell are you both doing here?"

It was Arthur Horner, clad in one of those monstrous fur hats that the well-to-do Russians wear.

Arthur had come down by the stairs from his room. He had already dined. He was delighted to see us both, for we were old friends. The guide appeared and before following her to the dining room, we made arrangements to meet immediately after our meal. The guide sat with us at the table and when the first course arrived she got up and went away.

We ate a good meal. We were both anticipating a chat with Horner. After
we had eaten, Bob suggested that we should go and get our overcoats. I de-
murred on account of the cold wind that was blowing outside, and also on
account of the racket the radio was making from each tramway post. Bob simply
led me to the lift and to our room.

"We've got to meet him outside," he told me. "There are things we cannot
talk about in the hotel."

"But why?" I demanded.

"Because he is not here on a holiday," he explained. "He's been here some
time, with his wife and his youngest daughter, in Moscow. I didn't expect to
meet him in Leningrad. He said he had been over the Putilov works." He came
closer to me. "If you must know," he said in a very low voice, "he's here to
be re-educated. Now can you grasp it, you blockhead?"

The light dawned. "I could stay here," I said.

"I don't want you to stay here," he told me. "I want the thing to look as
casual as possible. Don't be a child, Harold!"

Bob Ellis had been far too long a technician in King Street not to know al:
the whys and the wherefores of the party clique. He had been a member of the
Polit Bureau, for many years, and he had taken part in the debate on the
suggestion that Arthur should go into voluntary exile in Russia for a specific
period. Poor Arthur had been found guilty of a lapse in leadership. He had
been reluctant to go, but had bowed to the pressures. His term was now almost
ended and before returning to South Wales he was being given v.i.p. treatment.

Looking back on that episode I can now afford to smile. We walked about
Leningrad until we found out that Bob was thirsting for a cup of tea. We
found a small cafe in some side street, and thither we went to slake Bob's
aching thirst. The 'cafe' could not have been worse.

I paid scant attention to their under-cover conversation. Inner party
discussions were alien to me. What interested me was the manner in which they
would speak to each other and then break off to drag me into a conversation
about Arthur's domestic affairs. He told me that his wife preferred the
Rhondda to Moscow, and had been on the point of packing up and going home
when some friend had suggested that she should take the little girl and teach
her Russian. This she did, in three short weeks. We met the family when we
got to Moscow. They inhabited a room in a tenement. Their largest piece of furniture was the bed. Poor Arthur! What he had to pay in order to become the elected secretary of the Miners' Federation of Great Britain!

Bob was quite indignant about the exile. He was deeply unhappy because he had been partly responsible for its execution upon the little man. He need not have worried, for the same sentence was passed upon him some years later.

It came about in a most curious way.

Arthur Cook was lying in the Manor House Hospital dying of cancer. We both went along to see him. When we got there we found that he had a visitor, none other than Sir Oswald Moseley, who was still a member of the Labour Party. We sat chatting the small afternoon away. Bob, aided by Cook, held deep argument with Moseley. Cook did most of the laughing at the assailants.

Bob must have impressed Moseley, for when he broke with the Labour Party and set out to plan his fascist movement, his first real job was to inaugurate a paper. With this in view, he approached Bob and offered him the editorship. What Bob ought to have done was obvious. He ought to have reported the offer to Harry Pollitt. This he failed to do. Some time later, some months later, in a heated discussion in King Street he told Pollitt about the offer he had received. The fact that he had not reported the approach which had been made was regarded as being desperately serious. The fact that he had refused the offer did not in any way off set the heinous crime of his silence. The matter was reported to Moscow, and Bob was faced with a term of exile and re-education similar to that undergone by Horner.

Bob refused and was sacked from all the positions he held in the party. Ultimately his membership lapsed. Some time later he joined the staff of the Daily Express. He resigned that lucrative job when he disapproved of the paper's attitude to Russia. In all things, Bob Ellis was a positive man. Politics as well as journalism were for him purposively educative attitudes and not an indiscriminate determination of evil.

After that night in Leningrad was spent, Arthur Horner drifted away into the anonymity of Soviet Russia. I was prepared for that because he and I were far separated on the philosophical front. He was a trade union activist,
a simple politician who held a contemptuous disregard of capitalism. Marx and
he were strangers, as unaware of each other as were Marx and the leading
exponents of trade union leadership. Harry Pollitt was unaware of a Marxian
attitude to life outside the pamphlet front that had been erected over the
years by King Street under the facade of Martin Lawrence, publishers.

Bob became restless as soon as Horner had gone. He began to prepare for
his journey to Moscow. He could see that I was interested in Leningrad. He
Laughed at a proposed visit to the Ermitage, and, without saying farewell he
cought the train to Moscow. I could see that he was perturbed about something,
probably about Horner, and, as a member of the party he was most anxious to
get in touch with Losovsky.

As soon as he was gone I got in touch with Lydia Slonimsky. She came to
the hotel for me immediately after receiving my telephone call. She insisted
on talking to me in the public room. After enquiring about her husband's re-
lations in London she went away, carrying the parcel I had brought away with
her. It was agreed that after I had seen the Ermitage she would come for me and
take me to her home.

Recalling her over the years, she was a young woman of average height, very
good looking and slenderer than the ordinary Russian woman of her age. She was
dark and cheerful. Her voice was gentle and cultured. She came for me in the
afternoon. By morning had been swift. The Ermitage we went over, and then we
made a viewing of the facade of the Winter Palace. On, then, to the statue of
Peter the Great and a cold walk along the bank of the Neva, which was
beginning to freeze on the surface.

We walked to Lydia's flat in a block of houses on Vasilievsky Island. I was
surprised when she introduced me to her son, a boy nearing school age, which
was seven, and I was pleased to meet her mother, who appeared to be part of
the family. Sasha Slonimsky was not there when I arrived. He joined us at tea.
He was some kind of an executive in some shipyard.

"Did you like the parcel I brought you?" I asked her when we got into the
house.

I thought she was going to cry. "Why did she have to send me marmalade?"
she asked me. "It is horrible. Why did she not send me some stockings?"
It was when I suggested to her that she should ask Zamyatin to meet me that she became somewhat alarmed.

"Zamyatin! But why?" she cried. "It may be impossible."

The mother joined in her protest.

I stood firm on my request. I explained that all I was to do was to carry out Zina's request.

"But, surely, Aunt Zina must be aware of things!" Lydia expostulated.

"I don't understand," I began, but she cut me short.

"It will not be possible to see him," she said with assurance. "He lives alone... I mean... nobody ever visits him..."

I suggested that if it was all that difficult for her we had better let the matter drop. I could, I said, easily arrange it when I got back to Intourist's office. At this, Lydia shook her head. "The pity is that Aunt Zina does not quite understand," she offered in excuse. "It would be much better if you did not try to see him."

On my exclamation she turned to her mother for help. They went into a heated discussion. The little boy squatted on the floor to play with a toy.

In the end Lydia did ring Zamyatin. Much to her surprise, her request for his number was granted, and a halting conversation in Russian followed, that is on Lydia's part. She did most of the listening. When she finally hung up the very old fashioned receiver on its hook she told me that Zamyatin would be pleased to see me the following day at three-thirty in the afternoon. Lydia was most curt when she gave me his message, and for some time thereafter acted like a maid who had made a mistake and was reluctant to confess. I can now feel sorry for her. At the time I did regard it as being amusing.

At the hotel every one of the Intourist staff became disconcerted when I asked for their help in guiding me to the venue of my meeting with the author. I could see that they were quite dubious, from the manager down to the latest recruit. I was taken aside and asked why I wished to see the man.

By this time I sensed more than an official reluctance to have anything to do with the writer. How had I got in touch with him? I pointed out that we in England had the telephone. All I wanted to do was to present him with a copy of my novel. Had I brought the novel with me from England? No, I bought it at the stall in the foyer. I produced the book. The girl who had
sold it to me testified to the accuracy of my statement.

I was taken to one side by the manager and asked if Madame Vengerova-Minski had given me a letter, or any form of communication, a personal note, anything like that, to take to Zamyatin.

"She did not," I replied. "And if it is of any interest to you," I added, "it is my intention to communicate with the Minsky's by picture post card only." And with that I produced a picture post card which showed a clear photograph of the statue of the Tsar and the clear wording on the pedestal that stood at that time near the railway station.

"You spoke to gospodin Zamyatin on the 'phone?" he asked.

"Oh, yes," I replied, giving a bland smile. "He speaks excellent English."

"Very well, mister Heslop," he said. "I will see if we can make arrangements to take you to the house. You will not mind if our guide remains with you throughout the meeting with Zamyatin?"

"She will be most kindly welcome," I said.

I felt somewhat distressed. There was no one to whom I could confide. I had a feeling that I had not acted correctly, and that I might have transgressed the communist protocol.
Intourist assigned the same guide to accompany me to the home of Zamyatin. We went all the way by tram car. Some of it we had to walk.

"We pass Smolny on our way," she said to me. "Would you like me to show you round? We have plenty of time."

"I just wouldn't like to miss it," I told her.

We left the tramcar and walked into Smolny, a great, lonely building that somehow reminded me of a vast nonconformist church. We passed into the great hall that has come down from 1917. A huge painting of Lenin gesticulating before an immense crown stood far back of the platform, a picture of little artistic importance. My guide expressed some distaste of the picture and the artist. I was curiously impressed. I was glad to be there. For me it was a place that had held the sounds of vast periods of assertion and the loud murmur of deep discussions by men who had achieved their victory. We went to a room which had been occupied by Trotsky. After glancing around the place we left it, and she closed the door almost reverently. Trotsky had yet to be impaled. We tramped along many passages until we came to the rooms which Lenin and Krupskaya had occupied. Here, reverence deepened into worship.

It was by no means a large room. It had been preserved in every detail as the couple had left it. There was a writing table, hard chairs and kitchen utensils. A screen concealed the two iron bedsteads upon which the couple had slept. There was nothing dignified about the place. As a matter of fact Smolny made but little appeal outside the physical act of revolution.

Outside, in the road, we waited for another tramcar which would carry us
my old friends, the Minskys, are. How is Vengerova, please?"
"She was quite well the last time I saw her," I replied. "That was the
day before I sailed. A little bronchial, perhaps."
He smiled. "She always was," he said. "It is most pleasant to hear that
she is still so vigorous... in literature." Here he smiled again. "And Kola?
How is he? Very old and very well, eh?"
I nodded.
"It is grand to know about old friends," he commented. "Now, perhaps you
will tell me why Vengerova asked you to call upon me?"
I handed him the copy of my novel. "She wanted you to have this," I said.
He thumbed the book. "You wrote this in English?" he asked. "And Zina
Vengerova translated it?" He did not wait upon a reply. "It ought to be a
happy conjunction," he went on to say. "Just how many books has that indefat-
igable lady translated, I wonder. Oh! So Maisky introduces it. That is most
interesting. You have met him, I presume?"
"Not recently," I replied. "I met him a few times when he was in London."
"Ah, yes! I forgot. He is in Finland now." He reflected a moment. "I will
be pleased to read his preface."
"Madame Vengerova thought that you might be interested enough to... to
promote the book..."
"Do a bit of log-rolling. Is that it?"
I nodded to him on the other side of his smile.
"I do not think that Vengerova is fully aware...."
At that moment the silent, raven-black woman came into the room carrying
a tray of glasses, each filled with tea. Silently she offered the tray to us,
and then placed the tray on Zamyatin's table. When she had attended to our
sugar requirements, she withdrew.
After sipping at his glass, Zamyatin set it down on a book lying on his
table. He looked at me. "I cannot quite place you," he told me. "Are you a
'Geordie', may I ask?"
I was so taken by surprise that I broke into a laugh. His question almost
stunned me. A Geordie, indeed!
"I was born in south-west Durham," I answered, "at a place not far from
I will do all in my power she can rest assured." He smiled. "I will read it with interest," he added, and went on, "I do not think that she is fully aware of the fact that I am no longer as deeply concerned these days as I used to be in publishing and journalism. Tell her, please, that I cannot promise much. I am sure that she will understand."

And with that, he stood up. We both rose. He gave the girl a grave bow. His hand sought mine and I felt his strong grip. He walked to the door and held it open. We uttered our 'good byes' and we followed him to the front door, which he opened. Again we exchanged bows. At the bottom of the steps I looked back. He was closing the door.

As we walked out of the gate, the girl said to me: "Did you like him?"
"I thought he was quite charming," I replied.

She shrugged expressively. "I think he was neither nice nor charming," she observed. "He was courteous. Like all Russians, of course."
There is not the slightest doubt that Leningrad is one of the most beautiful cities on this planet. Everything must have conspired to make it so as soon as Peter the Great conceived it. How it may have fared over the years since I was there I cannot imagine. Much that I saw and admired may now be no more. So intense and so long a bombardment to which it was subjected would remove a great many things and places from the consciousness of the people who dwell there. It is sad to reflect on the fact that many of those buildings which caused me to catch my breath by their sheer loveliness may no longer exist. But this is no time to grieve, even over the things of the imagination.

No matter how one viewed the city, and from whatever vantage point, the city as it then was felt its way into the human emotions with almost the tenderness of the new lover. The manner in which it is disposed over its land mass—mass forever grudged by the waters of the four rivers—and the way in which each is joined by superb bridges, and the manner in which the islands are subdivided by canals are remarkable beyond estimation. The bridges are ever a wonder as well as a revelation. The approach to the city from the sea is breathtaking. It appears to loom up almost reluctantly out of the immense expanse of water, and then, as one gets nearer, to encourage its most majestic buildings to stand up on tip toe to view the stranger. There is a loneliness of exquisite beauty hovering over the city that almost hushes one to reverence. The spires and towers reach up out of the waters in quiet worship of sea and sun, almost supplicating reverence and worship from the stranger,
touching all to tearful gladness.

There is a bridge that carries the Nevsky Prospekt over a fairly wide canal to allow it to pierce straight into the heart of the city. It is the Anichkov Bridge. At each end of each parapet there is the sculpted figure of a man and a horse in different phases of tense struggle with each other. Both are naked. The impact upon the passer-by is so powerful and so total as to bring him to a halt and an admiration. Such a bridge stands upon one's memory for a long time. It is a great experience.

I recall the moment of my discovery.
I was with my guide, a charming girl.
"The bridge!" I gasped.
"We cross it," she said gayly. "That is why it was put there."
I stood in mute wonder.
"Shall we go on now?" she asked, somewhat perplexed by my adoration.
"How much have you to show me after that?" I demanded.
She offered me anger. "But this is outrageous," she told me. "Leningrad has more than a bridge to show you, you know!"
"Was that bridge here when Dostoevsky was alive?" I enquired.
"I do not know. Why do you ask?"
"I do not recall his ever describing it," I said to her. "Not even when he took that demented woman and the children begging."
"Who went begging?" It was her turn to make a demand.
"Marmeladov's wife," I said. "In Crime and Punishment. You know?"
She smiled that supercilious smile a woman offers to a child whom she would dearly love to punish for some misdemeanor. And then she shook her head. I knew at that moment that she was unaware of Dostoevsky's novel. I glanced at her in amazement.

"In the Soviet Union we do not concern ourselves with Feodor Dostoevsky," she said loftily.

I took the rebuke in silence. "He's buried hereabouts, isn't he?" I asked quite humbly.

"Hereabouts! What is 'hereabouts'?!" she cried. "I do not know the word."
She listened to my explanation of the term. "No," she said. "Not hereabouts. Somewhere else. What a strange word."

Beyond the bridge we turned to walk along the canal. The path was naked, unmade, scattered with shoe-punctuating gravel, much as are the paths in the Bois de Boulogne.

As we walked between the naked trees I did not feel alone. Throughout my adult life I have not lost the pleasure of reading Dostoevsky. My reverence for him has always been greater than my worship of George Gissing. Dostoevsky was the more consistent discoverer of his own milieu. I was here in Dostoievsky’s own city, and I felt myself utterly alone with him, walking by his side over the gravelly roadway. There I sensed the quietude and poverty of the city he had known. It was strange to walk with him. It made him so much more understandable.

My guide was conducting me to a church which had been erected on the spot where a Tsar was assassinated. It was called "the Church on the Blood". That deed of murder and the erecting of the monstrously unbeautiful memorial church had occurred long after Dostoevsky was dead. And yet, I could not escape the feeling that I was walking with him.

As we approached the church we had to pass through two lines of mendicants mostly women, who asked alms in a low sing-song. This astonished me. How often had the Russian novelist described this scene. Did the old Russia still exist, for heaven’s sake?

It was a dumbfounding experience. This Soviet Union, which had so kindly received me, was now almost thirteen years gone from the revolution. The Bolsheviks, the successors and continuators — as they styled themselves — of Marx and Lenin had held undisturbed power over all that long stretch of time. Yet here were the forlorn women and the age-laden men, beseeching alms, and moaning their poverty sing-song into the winds of their own change. Thirteen years! Back in England, all we had asked for had been five years of untrammeled power so that Ramsay MacDonald and Phillip Snowden could banish all poverty and woe from the land. And here, in Russia, after thirteen years...

My guide, nose high, led me through the lane made by supplicating, black shawled women, like any bourgeois ladypassing into the foyer of a theatre
on her way to watch a risqué play.

We entered the Church on the Blood.

As I stepped under the dome I almost felt Dostoevsky lay his thin hand upon my shoulder, and in some strange manner I experienced a reconciliation, and I felt comforted. I felt him near me, comfortably close to me, holding both rod and staff as he attempted to succour me. It was a strange experience, for Dostoevsky rarely takes his reader into a church. I have often thought since that perhaps the adulators of the great Russian novelist are wrong in their suppositions of his religious beliefs. One day, some sensitive writer, will examine the novels from the point of view of Dostoevsky's positive criticism of Christian belief. It would make an excellent book.

The church was vast and high, crowded with people, upon all of whom there had fallen the distressing mantle of poverty. I glanced about me, searching for a Mikhin or a Madame Epanchin, but I espied neither. It intrigued me to discover the body of a church so divided up. We stood on the outer edge of the iconostasis, not touching the demonstration of head banging and floor kissing. Beyond were the worshippers pressing against the low rail which held them from contact with the officiating priests.

I was impressed by the actions of the people before the ikons. I could appreciate Tolstoi's cynical utterance as I watched them at their antics of worship. "Send a fool about his prayers, and he will smash his forehead." The experience was fascinating beyond all belief. I had never before entered a place of worship where there were no seats. It is the row on row of pews that add some formality to a church service. Here there was nothing, and the consequence was that everybody was at liberty to express himself or herself in whatever manner was felt to be most suitable. The priest, a fat man with an extraordinarily long beard, stood on a platform, holding a wooden cross in his hand, bowing and smiling at those who were outside the iconostasis. In actuality, the proceedings, when we arrived, were drawing to a close. A priest was at the lectern reading loudly from the gospels. While he did so, the choir somewhere in the background spilled out a glory of sound. One just had to close one's eyes to hear some smaller Chaliapin booming out parts of
the strange litany of his church. Strangely enough, the deep, trenchant bass and the incredibly high tenor were members of this furtive congregation.

The church was incredibly bare. The architecture was almost modern, very florid, as befitted a memorial to a murdered monarch, whose remembrance was excluded from the Soviet mind. The floor lay unscored by the feet of the generations. From where we stood we could watch the men and women performing their purposeless genuflections. The icons were secured to the columns supporting the dome of the church within the reach of the lips of even the young. Men and women jostled each other as they strove to kiss a selected ikon. Not one seemed to pause during the commissioning of adoration. I have been in places where I have witnessed the irrepressible impulses of men and women to commit their own raptures and vehemences of worship, but I had not seen anything to compare with this atonement. Women abused themselves as frenziedly as men. Some even thumped their foreheads against the tiled floor as loudly as the men. They moaned. They slobbered. They cried. Women held up their babes to the higher ikons, and the holier pictures, and, despite their cries, held them in an ecstasy of their own devotion. It was profound and disgusting.

The singing ended. The reading fell into a low monotone. The fat priest descended to the gate, leaned over it, and held out his small hand-cross for each worshipper to kiss as they passed him by. When a frenzied women tried to take the cross in her own hand, he held it aloft and spoke to her.

The church emptied. My guided intimated to me in a loud voice that I had seen all the show. She made ready to depart, and this she did without any ceremony of her own. She asked no blessing. She permitted me to do without. When we reached the open air the line of beggars seemed to have lengthened. All were holding out their hands. All wailed their individual woes. I looked for Dostoevsky, but he had gone.

A woman approached me, her claw-like hands seeking to take hold of my coat. The guide spoke sharply, and the poor wretch sank back into the line.

"Professionals!" she snapped into my ear. "There is work for them all, but they do not wish."

Such an experience in the land of the Soviets I had not anticipated.
After lunch I discovered that I had finished with the Russian Church. Near the hotel Europa stood the majestic St. Isaac's Cathedral. Unfortunately it was undergoing repairs, and so was closed for an indefinite period. As a recompense for what I apparently had missed I was to visit the fortress of "Saint Peter Paul", as they have it in Leningrad. We followed the Neva to the bridge near to it, which we crossed, and made our way into the forbidding place. I was surprised to find that it provided a graveyard for the Tsars.

We went straight to the cells where once the important prisoners were incarcerated. I was surprised to find how spacious the cells were, how ill they were lighted, and how cold they must have been in the depth of the winter. They were cold enough when I went there. The one we entered was that precise cell in which a famous woman prisoner committed suicide by setting herself on fire. I listened to the story with interest, and I was glad to escape into the yard where the kinsfolk of the prisoners were permitted to meet their loved ones, a dreary place in all conscience. Cruelty is not, and has not been, unknown to the Russians.

The church into which I was conducted I found magnificent, ornate, pretentious, and dark, most fitting for the great to worship their God and to lie buried in. Every one of the tombs was exactly like its neighbour. They were laid down in exact lines. The name on the coffin-like superstructure identified the occupant below. An English churchyard serving a slum district would have more artistic arrangement than the place wherein the dead royalty were packed. The place was so dreary as to be ridiculous. And yet, it was a unique chapel to visit, for in the body of the church were two throne-like chairs, one for the Tsar and one for his spouse. The only church in Russia that had a couple of chairs!

We recrossed the river and walked back to do obeisance to one of the finest equestrian statues in the world, that of Peter the Great. So many have visited it, and so many have felt the wonder and the enchantment of that magnificent piece of sculpture standing there above the Neva.

"Isn't Dostoevsky buried somewhere in Leningrad?" I asked my guide.

She thrust my question aside. I spoke mischievously, for I was aware that the great writer was not included in the itinerary of Intourist. I
fell to wondering where they kept the poor man's chains.

"I simply cannot understand your interest in Dostoevsky," she said, rather angrily. "Surely, you are aware of the fact that he is simply not read in Russia. Lenin did not think him comparable with Tolstoi. You understand?"

"He is read a great deal in England," I told her.

"In translation, of course!" she cried.

I felt the sneer. "Constance Carnet was a very accomplished translator," I pointed out. "She also translated Turgenev, you know."

"Tolstoi?"

"Indeed. Quite a lot." I assured her.

But that was as far I could get. Dostoevsky is still in chains in his native land. The only satisfaction that I could gain from this deliberate exclusion was that the average Russian did not know what he was missing.

I became aware of this soon after I obtained employment with the Trade Delegation in Bush House. There I worked with a charming Ukrainian girl, the wife of one of the department heads. We spoke of Dostoevsky one day and she confessed to me that she had not read a line of his work. I told her where I had seen a copy of The Idiot, in a shop near the British Museum. One day she plucked up courage to buy it. All the following week she walked about her business in a doze. I asked her how she liked the novel.

"Oy! Oy!" she cried, holding her head in her hands and swaying to and fro. "But it is so beautiful, so beautiful! I never knew. So magnificent! Oy! Oy!"

I must have been woefully young in those days. There was that day in the Ermitage. Nobody had instructed me in the art of inspecting the treasures of a museum, or art gallery. Even so, I still find the multitudes of pictures offered on the walls of such places just a little too much. Today, it is my delight to go into such a place, select a picture, preferably on eye level, and sit down before it so that it can drift into my consciousness. In the Ermitage my guide was my guide and no more. She was no critic, and for that I remain most truly thankful. There were the Rembrandts. Before them I held her apart as an instructive signifier. I glimpsed stupendous beauty. If ever
I go back to Leningrad I will spend my own time in that wonderful gallery.

We stood before the arrangement of that colossal service which Josiah Wedgewood presented to Catherine. Much of it, immense masses, was on show. I looked and wondered. Every rural scene different from all others. Where had old Josiah got his artists. As I looked and wondered I heard her voice.

"Tell me," she said to me. "This Wedgwood. Was he a noted potter?"
I left Leningrad on the night train. I marvelled at the fact that there could be four classes on a Russian train, first and second class wagons lits, soft class and hard class. I asked myself just what had happened over the thirteen years that had passed. The destitute I had already seen. Now I was come face to face with a four class status. Before the train moved off the remaining three berths in my compartment were claimed by three Russian men. They spoke to me in their own language, and I replied in my own. At that there was a joint cry of, "Angličanin."

I had acquired a trashy novel in the hotel, and with this I intended to pass the time away until the compartment was turned into a four bed affair. After a while one of them offered me a few words in my own language.

"You read Galsworthy?" he asked.

I handed him my book. He examined it and spelled out the title on his lips. Then he handed it back to me. "Not Galsworthy," he said.

"You know John Galsworthy?" I asked.

He nodded and did his best with the pronunciation I had given of the novelist's name.

The three men fell to discussing some topic in their own language until it was time to arrange the compartment. The man who had spoken to me took the bunk opposite to me. The other two climbed up against the roof of the cabin.

We all fell asleep.

During the night the train came to a halt and there was a stampede of people to the kiosks on the platform. My friend returned carrying two glasses of tea, one of which he offered me, and which I most gratefully received.
Moscow came with the early morning.

There was a slight covering of snow. There was also a harsh nip in the air. I left the train and made my way along the platform. I had been informed in Leningrad that Intourist would meet me at the station. I went in search of such a guide. I discovered a girl, and I stopped in front of her. She asked my name.

"No," she said, almost tartly, "I have no knowledge of you. You must go to the entrance and wait. I am sure that someone will come for you. Goodbye."

I did as I was bid, feeling not a little discomfitted. I had not expected the carpet, but I had expected somebody.

A voice spoke my name.

I looked round and beheld a tall chap holding out his hand in greeting. "Sasha, me," he said. "Sasha Subnov. No speak English."

Thereafter he remained Sasha, a charming, helpful, tolerant Russian gentleman. He led me out of the station and helped me into a droshky which he had waiting. We went jingling off to nowhere. Whenever we came to some point of interest he gave me light nudge in the ribs. He spoke the name of the street or the building. His dig was pronounced when we came into the Red Square, and even more pronounced when we passed Lenin's tomb.

I was in Moscow after that. The dream had come true.

Moscow was rummaging all about me. I was staying in a hotel-cum-residence affair a furlong or so from St. Basil's Cathedral, clinging through the ages to the height above the Moscov River at the end of the great square. Opposite the hotel was a boyar's house which was maintained as a museum which nobody even bothered to enter. From the door of the hotel, a walk to the right took one on to the square, while a walk to the left led one to the Chinese Market where nothing else but books appeared to be sold.

That vast rectangle, one side of which is the entire facing wall of the Kremlin is a fitting parade ground for any state. The Russians ignore it except on those state occasions. Most of the year it is just a vast square, unpeopled over its length and breadth, bearing witness to the gates of the Kremlin. The Lenin Mausoleum stands stark and huge away from those gates. A
line of dark-clothed people stretches decorously from the entrance, moving slowly to the fulfilment of what might be a duty or the satisfying of a curiosity.

Bob and I took our places at the end of the queue shortly after we became reunited in the hotel. We moved slowly towards the entrance, and just as slowly down the steps and into the chamber. No pause was allowed to anybody. No time was offered anyone to examine the beautiful marble of which the place was constructed. At the bottom of the steps a right turn brings one into the mausoleum which houses the honoured dead. The body lies in a glass case of considerable size. Three armed soldiers stand before it. The visitor must pass up the stairs, along the back of the case and down the stairs, then out to the day after climbing up the exit stairs. The viewing of the body is made as one moves around the three sides of the catafalque. For the westerner it was not a pretty sight. Death is not honoured by such a peepshow. It was not a sight to revisit.

In the hotel there was a gathering of the clans. The conference was organized by the Russian Association of Proletarian Writers, and was to take place in Kharkov from the 6th to the 15th of November, 1930. It was to be known as the Second Plenum of the International Bureau of Revolutionary Literature. It was a magnificent presumption. And that was all. There were some days to go before we could entrain for the then capital of the Ukraine, and, fortunately for us our period of waiting held some joyous interludes. The leader of the Committee, as far as we could gather in Moscow, was a Hungarian exile called Bela Illes. He was a big, burly man who each time he met one seized one's hand, gave it a vigorous shake, and greeted one with the word, "Drast!" He spoke no English. Ludwig Renn, then a prominent German novelist, who was a most competent linguist, told me that Illes spoke Russian like a German, and German like a Hungarian. "I don't know Hungarian," he confessed to me, "so I cannot tell you how he speaks it."

Bob and I found ourselves in the Bolshoi Theatre for a performance of Lohengrin. We had an excellent seat in one of the huge boxes at the back of the auditorium from which we could look down to the stage. The theatre was a revelation. There were no galleries stretched across the vast auditorium such
as there would have been had it been built in London. The sound was let loose
in the vast space to the glory of sound. Magnificence was set upon the Bolshoi
to the ultimate. The opera was mounted fittingly for such an auditorium. King
Mark was a deep toned singer and Lohengrin an impressive tenor. The first act
was Wagner, incredibly long, indescribably ponderous, and completely worthy
of the strictures of Tolstoi. I was interested in a production which asked
for each singer to mount the same box-like platform set in the middle of the
stage on each occasion when he - there was no she - had to declaim. The getting
up and stepping down seemed to me quite amusing. There was great Wagnierian
beauty even in the interminably sustained declamations. I was glad when a
swan of immense proportions glided along near the roof of the stage and
carried away Lohengrin.

The marvelouse prelude of the following act was played with an excellence
that I had not until then experienced, and not since had the pleasure of re-
capturing. The act was played throughout in a blue twilight. The duet still
lingers in my memory after the passing of so many long years. It was something
achieved.

A theatre crowd in Russia is always fascinating to the observer. The Mos-
cow theatre crowd I found to be most distinguished in its behaviour. In the
first place there is no smoking, and in the second those who fail to re-enter
the auditorium after the bell has ceased are excluded for that particular act.
To obviate anything so distressing, the members of the audience stay in their
seats. Many join the promenade in a part of the theatre set aside for that
purpose. Hugging the walls the promenade goes round and round until the bell
rings. Icecream and soft drinks in the auditorium or the promenade were un-
thought of, or were when I was there. The Russians of the period of the First
Five Year Plan were not ice-cream conscious. To acquire a loaf of bread was
a more important task.

They take the theatre seriously in Russia, even the children. I went with
Ludwig Renn to the famous Children's Theatre to see a play the name of which I
have long forgotten. The Young Communist, a girl, battled enormously and for-
tuitously against tremendous odds, and, God bless her, succeeded in overcom-
ing the Wicked One, but not without the aid of her young audience. It was an ex-
cclusive and a most entertaining experience.
The ballet is more of a religion than is the opera. I recall a ballet in
the Bolshoi which appeared to be based on the story contained in Victor Hugo's
*The Hunchback of Notre Dame*. There was some magnificent dancing. I do not
think I ever witnessed any such rubbish. But, then ballet passed me by.

Bela Illes was never in the same office twice. He was as elusive as any
fox. One simply took him when he appeared. Only once were we called to a joint
powwow, and this was held in a room in a building opposite the gates of the
Lubyanka. When a day or so later I made my way to that self same building
and asked to see Illes I found that nobody in the place knew of him or could
tell me where he might be found. I put it down to the Russian way, until I
tried to find Sergei Dinamov, the then great panjandrum of literature in the
Soviet Union.

I met him in Kharkov. In fact I spent the evening with him. I found him to
be a most charming person. He gave me the address of his office and told me
to call any time, when we could continue our discussion on English writers.
When I got back to Moscow I set out to find him. I rang his office. The
voice at the other end of the wire merely cracked a few jokes. I set out on
foot to find the address he had given me. I found it. The place was full of
clerks. Not one of them had even heard of such a person as Dinamov. I exposit-
tuated. Sergei Dinamov, I informed them, was the editor of the *Literaturna
Gazetta*. They merely shook their heads.

I never saw Sergei Dinamov again.

Bob was getting anxious about the conference. Bob was a leading member
of the Communist Party of Great Britain, a member of the Polit-Bureau, and the
editor of *The Worker*. He paid repeated visits to the Cominform and the Trade
Union Headquarters. He pleaded with Losovsky to get them to move. He threat-
ened to return to London. He might just as well have saved himself the trouble,
for, one dark night we stumbled over the rails of a huge siding, clambered
into the compartments of a train that, in some miraculous way, loomed up in
the darkness.

It was the same old Russian train, soft travel for most, and wagons-lit
for the top brass. Segregation of class remained adamant until we got back to
Moscow.
It was the usual Russian railway set-up, four beds to each compartment, so many compartments to the carriage, and an old man near the door to do the chores and keep the fire going.

The American delegation were in the same carriage. The remaining spaces were occupied by the clerks and stenographers attached to the conference. The Americans were the representatives of the John Reed Club, rather than of the proletarian writers. When we pointed this out to them we were assured that all the proletarian writers who counted in America were members of the John Reed Club. There we left it. Mike Gold, the doyen of the American Left, was not with the group. As a matter of fact, the conference was some days gone in its work before he put in an appearance. When he did arrive it was in the company of Leonid Leonov, a well-thought of Russian writer.

What did impress us both was the resentment each American, except John Herman, felt for Mike Gold. There was A.B. Magil, a dedicated Jewish communist who was really born to become a rabbi. He was one, physically as well as spiritually. Bill Gropper and Bob Ellis were both very good American cartoonists. There was a Harry Alan Potemkin, a smart Jew who knew all that there was to know about filming and the American film industry. John Herman and his wife, Josephine Herbst were also attached to the group, but how and in what connection I did not understand. Herman was a great friend of Hemingway, and made no bones about his friendship, which was not reciprocated by the American delegation. He was also a sworn friend of Michael Gold. Over all this delegation reigned the presiding genius, Joshua Kunitz, a Russian expatriate who carried an American passport.

On the train we were given a meal and after that we drifted off to our bunks. None of us resented the fact that the waggons lits coaches at the front of the train were occupied by the leaders of R.A.P.P. In all probability it was accepted that such important people had need of such important ease. Let it be said in the honour of Ludwig Benn that he refused accommodation in the high class part of the train.

Control of our business had ascended from Illes to Leopold Averbach the moment we were entrained. This Averbach was a youngish man with a loud laugh and a head shaved to the bone and razored in that precise Russian manner prev-
silent at the time. He it was whose duty lay in giving the conference the pre-
cise proletarian tone. If the truth were to be known, he was the direct rep-
resentative of the Kremlin at the conference. He it was who made the longest
speech, one of Krushchev proportions, and the most sweeping reply to the dis-
cussion, at Kharkov. The poor man must have committed certain errors when he
spoke, or the truths he adumbrated may, by the time Stalin began purging,
have become errors. Every speech delivered at the conference, my own included,
was printed in the report and circulated world-wide, except that of Averbach,
and his reply. Poor man! The proletarian literary world was his oyster. His
immediate cronies throughout the conference were Bela Illes and Sasha Fadeyev.
Fadeyev was an accomplished man. He spoke perfect English. He was immensely
tall, taller, maybe, than Henri Barbusse. He was as straight as a ramrod,
ebullient, happy, determined.

It is sad to reflect on that trio even now. Illes still lives in his own
country; Averbach was executed; Fadeyev, anticipating his own execution, blew
his brains out in his home in Leningrad.

I felt an enormous affection for Fadeyev. I can visualise his tall, slim
figure even now. Always well dressed, always ready to laugh, clean-shaven
and handsome, full of fun, and happy as a cloud. I never saw a person who could
eat so many sunflower seeds, and so quickly, as Sasha.

I recall that evening in Kharkov when we watched Earth, the most poignant-
ly beautiful film it has been my privilege to see. It was the epitome of rural
beauty. After the show the glasses of tea were served. Fadeyev was in an up-
roarious mood. He called me over to where he sat with his friends. When I had
joined them he took me a little aside to crack a rather risque joke, to which
I offered the Tyneside ejaculation, rather loudly, of "Wheee!" To my aston-
ishment a silence fell, and men and women turned to look at me. Fadeyev, taken
by surprise, stamped his foot and then burst into a roar of laughter. The
moment eventually lost itself in the ensuing talk. Quite recovered, Fadeyev
told me in a whisper that I had committed a most serious faux pas. The word
I had uttered was the Russian for the female sexual organ. He counselled me
to be careful in the use of my curious ejaculation. Curious, I asked him the
Russian for the male organ, and, rather reluctantly he gave it to me. I must
Bela Illes opened the debate on the morning of the conference. He offered up to discussion the RAPP view of world literature. It is usual for the main speaker in a Russian sponsored conference or plenum to speak at enormous length. Illes was no exception to this rule. He went on and on interminably. At the end of his report he was granted a rapturous ovation. Thereafter, and for some days, the delegates climbed to the rostrum and there disported themselves courageously. They all criticised the leading writers of their day in their own country. Even Henri Barbusse was not exempt from French stricture. Nor did he escape a lot of other criticism. I asked Louis Aragon why they were all so critical of the great French writer. Had they all forgotten, I asked, that he had impressed Lenin with his novel Under Fire?

Louis Aragon was one of the nicest men any man or woman could know. "Even Barbusse must be called to account when he strays off the line," he told me. "Do you know that he intends to write a life of Christ? Can you beat it! The absurdity!"

It was in deed the initiation of the world organisation for all the proletarian writers. The hall swarmed with them. They came from all the republics in the Soviet Union. You could identify them the moment they opened their mouths. The Russian speaking Russian addressed the "proletarii pisaitelli" while the Ukrainian addressed the "proletary pismeniki". Other patois were distinguishable. The talk went on. None of the speeches were translated, not even the important ones.

The American boys managed to get themselves into some sort of trouble. They excoriated Mike Gold for not turning up on time, the world's worst con-
that he was not possessed of a pair of black shoes. His were dark tan. They were all magnificent players, every one of them. They did the huge lady proud. Two or three days later they put on Prince Igor, in the same theatre, with the same orchestra, and with the same huge lady in the soprano role. I had not seen the opera before. We saw Igor bid his wife farewell. The stage revolved and we found ourselves in the presence of the same lady and a multitude of females who attended her court. When the scene was completely changed we passed into and through, and out of one of the longest bouts of soprano singing I have ever heard. Bob was sitting beside me. He had missed the previous concert. I saw that he was massively impressed by the lady. About the singing he held his own peace. Welshmen have their own ideas about singing, soprano singing included.

"Now we'll get the ballet," he told me.

I wondered how he knew that, for he was no opera lover, but I soon found out when the curtain rose and revealed all the cast, Igor included, standing beside the great dame, and all the chorus and ballet girls, clustered about Ludwig Renn.

He showed no embarrassment. He showed no fear. He did not appreciate how ludicrous it all was. He came to the edge of the stage, glanced down at the upturned faces of the orchestra, smiled at the conductor, who lay back negligently, opened his mouth and made an announcement to do with the conference in Russian. He repeated his speech in Ukrainian, then German, then French and finally in English. It was a marvellous exercise, one which sent all his hearers into ecstasies. The stage people pressed closer upon him. One of the dancing girls reached up and kissed him. In the end, the under-dressed girls escorted him from the stage. The great curtains fell. The conductor sprang forth from his indolent posture and brought the orchestra to order. I must say that the Polovstian Dance was wildly acclaimed.

The final act was more than a tour-de-force. It was a revelation. A lot of bell ropes dangled from the flies, and upon these two clownish creatures disported themselves, and in the midst of the bells clanging. The stage setting showed the ramparts and a slope leading up to them. And on to the stage strode the great lady clad in a magnificent Ukrainian costume. Here
she paused to toy magnificently with all the notes Borodin had written into
the part, except with those which she reached after great effort, until the
escaped Igor appeared upon the ramparts. Carrying herself and her song up
the slope, she gathered the long mustachioed Igor into her vast embrace, and
there she held him. From where I sat I could see the beads of sweat oozing
out of the unfortunate man's brow. He was under a double strain, that of
singing his own part and that of supporting the woman, and especially when she
had to tense herself in order to produce her highest notes. I felt sorry for
the singer. He possessed a magnificent voice, and he knew how to use it. I
groaned with him as he brought her to stage level, for he was almost on the
point of actual physical collapse.

In time there came the great choir from Kiev to that same stage. I can
recall over the decades the sheer beauty of their singing. Bob surprised me
when he said that they were a disappointment, for they had no "bwll". He did
forget about their shortcomings as singers when he became aware of the sing-
ular beauty of some of the ladies of the choir. They were young, and many of
them were beautiful. Bob reached his own haven of delight when he discovered
that the ladies were to be lodged that night in our hotel.

The big night for me was when the bandura players came and offered us a
their own particular programme. There were, if I remember correctly, nine
men in that party. Their instruments were of ascending sizes, from one as small
as a violin to one almost as large as a cello. The concert was given in the
conference hall, and was mainly for the delegates. It was quite dissimilar
from anything contained in a modern Red Army Ensemble show. In fact it was
unique. They were performers who sat still upon their chairs, nursing their
instruments, caring for the fragrance of those instruments with their own
deep concern. They took their playing and their singing as the gift they had
to offer. They sang from a castrata height down to Chaliapin depths. I do not
recall a concert which touched me so deeply. I remember a trio sung by those
simply clad Ukrainians against the continuous background of plucking by their
six colleagues that was so touching, so elevating, and so deeply burdened
with the powerful transports of the human voice, that I took it upon myself
to ask for an encore. It not only affected those nine men deeply, it embar-
rassed them.
rassed them. Before accepting my invitation, they rose slowly to their feet, came forward, and bowed directly to me in gratitude.

Where are those men and those women today? Kiev and Kharkov stood in the track of the Nazi storm. I often cogitate their fates. We were all contemporaries, and baring untowards accident they must have all lived to the day of horror when total war fell upon those wide, flat, open steppes.

Memories of that black, flat country crowd upon me as I write. There was that hazardous ride I had in a two-seater plane, and skimming over that flat strange country side. The horizon fled before me as we rose over the field just outside Kharkov. The great, black river, flowing vastly over the terrain, seemed to gather the vast space into its own embrace. What a steadily flowing river is the Dnieper, and how slow and gracious. Not like any river I had so far known. A river in tune with infinitude. The mountains, if there were any, were hidden beyond the rim of the world. The most wondrous things were the great, broad river, the vastly continuing earth, black, unfenced, much of it already under the plough, land made ready to receive the snows of winter, and the strange lack of wooded land. What a country in which to deploy tanks against the flesh of men and women and children.

What happened to it all? The tiresome construction sites here and there? The pretty girls from Kiev? The bandura singers? The quiet, unimpressive and ill-clad folks of Kharkov? Their unimaginable fates force one to lay down his book and glance back over the aeons that now stretch over the bodies of forgotten men. How did they all fare? Kharkov was almost totally destroyed. Is its market place still there. Life does bear on its breath great evils as well as great joys. Poor Kharkov.

I still remember Skrypnik. The tall, bearded, slender commissar, leader of the Ukraine that was. When he came to the conference podium he appeared to be clad in solid leather. What he said to us I do not know, for we were without an adequate interpreter. He looked a magnificent man.

When I was working in Intourist a couple of men dropped in and they were passed on to me. Richard Bird, the actor, was one of them. The other was a charming young man who appeared to do all the fetching and carrying. They told me that they were going to produce a play called "Clear All Wires" in a London
I told them of my pleasure in coming to their country. I shut up, and I
stepped down. I received two rounds of the first two lines of the Internation-
ale. I stood aside while a translation was given of my speech. I stood through
a full rendering of the Internationale.

The next day we were taken on an interminable motor bus ride through the
surrounding country. The road over which we travelled was unmade and uneven.
From being tiresome it became agonising. We left the busses and walked down
a lane leading into a copse. Into this birch grove we all walked. There we
refreshed ourselves with kvass, which had been brought in large containers.
Then, under the leadership of Fadayev, we, or they, sang some of those languor-
ous Russian songs so dear to the native heart. Any pause during which the
individuals sought their memories for other songs was taken up with eating
sunflower seeds. The trick is to select your seed, place it between the front
teeth, crack the husk, hold the kernel and spit out the two halves of the
seed, chew, swallow, and repeat time after time. The knack is to place the
seed between the teeth. All Russians are adept at the art. Fadayev was more
adept than most Russians.

After such an unappetising meal and more sad songs we got back into the
busses and finished up at a large construction site. There were scores of
men working under a heavy guard of armed soldiers. As soon as we got down
from our conveyances the men came forward to offer us greetings. Fadayev be-
came leader of ceremony. He insisted upon my sitting on a log of wood with
him and talking to a group of these strange men. We had our photographs taken.
This done, he selected about a dozen of the prisoners and set me in their
midst. Our photographs were taken.

"Do you like these men?" Fadayev asked me. "You should, you know," he
assured me. "All of them are serving long sentences for murder. Every mother's
son of them."

The next evening, rather late, we boarded the same train as that which
had brought us from Moscow. We slept through the night. In the morning we
came to a halt at a wayside station. The platform was lined with troops. The
officer in charge stood at attention in a continuous rigid salute as we de-
trained. He called for cheers as we passed off the platform. Outside the
station were busses waiting to take us to the township in the distance. We were eventually decanted outside a stark cement building which was to be a hotel when it was completed. Breakfast was laid for us. We ate a simple meal and washed it down with kvass. While we did so a tenor regaled us with arias from operas. The pianist was quite capable, and where and when he was incapable he left the songster to do his own job.

We boarded the busses again. At the station we took another salute from the troops. Then we climbed on to the train and some hours later we arrived at the Dnieprostroj construction.

There was no accommodation for us at the dam and so we ate and slept on the train. We were all fully aware that Russia, in those now distant days, was a severely rationed country, and this we accepted implicitly. It would be impolitic to share the food in the canteens and so consume the rations of the workers, and we felt that it would be wrong to eat much better meals anywhere else than on the train. So we ate and slept in tolerable railway coach conditions, but I cannot say that it was home-from-home living in a stationary soft-class compartment for a whole week. Very soon the sanitary conditions became somewhat distressing. When this happened the train was simply shunted a little further along the line. We soon found out that sanitary arrangements were more on the take than on the give, especially in rural Russia. Under imaginable circumstances we lived through each day and slept through each night.

When we arrived, towards afternoon, we discovered that we had forsaken the snows and were once again resting on the bent back of a late summer. It was really beautiful weather, soft and cool, almost like that of a late English spring. Left alone, set apart from the leaders of the conference, we conducted all our forages into the area overtaken by this tremendous construction. Quite early we made our way down to the edge of the river Dnieper. The tumult was deafening. From where we stood we were able to appreciate to the full the mammoth proportions of the immense project. It was much bigger than any I had yet seen. Work was being carried out on both banks, the intention being to mesh later. In the meantime the throttled water of the river roared into the upper-
ture with stupendous force. The construction was shaping itself under the impulse of a gigantic labour force, and was slowly arriving at the point when gap would be closed and the massive torrent held back and harnessed. The black water leaped to its own freedom with a shout of noise that almost impailed the ear drum. Here we beheld an unimaginable force resisting obstruction and imprisonment.

The railway along which we had come crossed the river a great distance from the site. We decided to cross it after breakfast the next day. By the time we set out the day had become torrid with heat, and our journey proved to be a long one. Our suggestion had been agreed, but we were warned not to loiter on the bridge. "Nobody dares to loiter on any railway bridge in Russia," we were told.

Our road led through a village which seemed to be half submerged. It was like any village described by Gogol, a street of half-buried dwellings. Each of the roofs could be reached by hand. As we saw, the dwellings were deeper in the earth than they were built up in the open. There was little else but dust. The foot sank into the fine stuff more freely than it sinks into the accumulated dust in a coal-mine. A policeman emerged from somewhere to have a look at us, and in doing so stumbled over a half grown pig lying smothered in the middle of the roadway. He gave it a savage kick and sent it squealing along the street.

We climbed the embankment to the railway, saluted the armed guard, and set off to walk across the bridge. We were now offered a magnificent view of the act of construction. We would have preferred to pause, but we knew that we must not do so. We greeted the armed sentry at the other end. He smiled. He did not speak. As we descended the embankment we could visualise the plan of building. Beyond was the concrete mixing complex, a huge place, where the trucks were filled with the prepared cement and organised into trains and drawn to the top of the dam. Arrived there, no time was lost in slinging the entire ten ton truck with its load into the air and over the finished side of the dam and dropped it exactly where the labour force could receive it. When the entire mass was disposed of in this way, the
trucks were reformed into a train and taken back to the cement works for refilling. We explored the construction from the far side of the dam. The topmost height had been reached on both sides. At set distances all over the top of the cement plateau were set up boring machines, each tended by an old man or an oldish woman, who crouched over the borehole, seated upon an upturned box, and watching the plunging of the drill. The hole was not of a large diameter. We were told that the hole would be driven right through the concrete massif and far into the earth to solid rock. When each hole was completed a very fine concrete mix would be forced into it under tremendous force, and by this means the structure would be riveted to its base.

Having exhausted the sights on the top of the dam we were conducted to the base where we could see the work that was going on there. There, near the outward sloping foot of the dam we were placed in a most uneasy conjunction with the roaring river, the anger of which became more impressive the nearer one got to it.

That portion of the dam base upon which we stood was by then sufficiently tensile to accept the buttressing of the main wall. A huge area had been enclosed within vast concrete pallisadings and this was now in process of being filled with concrete. Scores of men, women, youths and maidens, all shod in thick leather boots were engaged stamping down the viscous mass. A whistle was blown and calls at work in the enclosure moved out of it. Then a truck was lowered to a point above the stamping ground and its contents emptied. Another whistle was blown when the truck was out of the way and the workers leaped down upon the stuff and began trampling into the mass upon which it had been spilled. There were no shovels. These men and these women were actually building that colossal dam with their feet. They stamped and they prodded in an abandonment of labour I had not hitherto comprehended. It was almost pitiable. I stared at them as they laboured in their ant-like confusion and I wondered. I lingered to watch, fascinated, astounded. Here were men and women working to the command of a whistle, leaping in when it blew and dragging their cement clodded feet out when it blew again. And so it went on.
They repeated the process with an exaggerated intensity of action. I felt sad and confused.

I quit the scene humbly. It was as if I had been passed over the centuries and shown the people of the Pharaohs building their pyramids. Why did they do it? Were they so young and so eager as to believe that with this slavery they were building socialism? Was socialism worth so much agony of energy? I spoke to Egon Erwin Kisch, a famous Czech journalist, and I asked him what he thought of it all. Did he not think it was a most strange expenditure of human labour power? (Poor Egon! He died in the Spanish Civil War!)

"You read Marx?" he asked me.

I told him that I studied Marx.

"I'd like to," he said. "I haven't the time these days. There is too much going on."

We were approaching our train, and instead of going into his first class cabin, he took me by the arm and escorted me into the evening.

"Those cement trampers you saw," he said, "have their feet examined every day. The doubtful twice a day. The wellingtons are also examined. I don't think you should worry."

I could see that he was excited by what he had seen that day. He began to expatiate on the importance of such constructions as this for the building of socialism. I just listened to him. He had an enormous command of my own language and was never at a loss for words. I did not tell him that Dniepropetrovsk had shed much of its romance for me.

"There is no such thing as romance in labour," I said to him.

"That isn't Marxism," he snapped, "and you know it." He walked on and turned to go back to the train. "Didn't you expect this kind of thing when you came to Russia?" he went on, half angrily. "These things are necessary, are they not?"

I told him that I could appreciate the need for the Bolsheviks to build the means for the construction of socialism, and he cut into my speech with: "Well, what more do you want?"

We reached the train and bade each other "Good night".
you mind?"

Bob, at no time averse to discussing such a subject, smiled and began to roll one of his thin, almost tobacco-less cigarettes. "I've had that idea since we left Moscow," he said. "What's on your mind?" He saw Renn glance at me. "Don't mind him," he said. "He's one of us."

Renn nodded and began to outline the situation in his own country as he understood it. Things, he told us, were growing intolerable. The proletariat was recovering from its dismay and was thinking in terms of revolution. It was seeing through Hitler. He told us of a considerable accretion to the membership of the communist party, and he grew eloquent in a quiet way. Renn was a man who impressed his fellows by his singular charm and disarming simplicity.

Bob did not badger him, nor did he offer Renn a sample of his cynicism, which was always utter whenever he spoke of "that bunch in King Street".

Renn listened to him with a concentrated expression on his charming face. "It is a pity that you feel so much out of countenance with the party, Bob," he said. "I suppose it is because everything in your country is so... so... blank." He waited until Bob's smile had drifted from his deep, sensual eyes.

"You see, in Germany, things are different. When I get back there we, the party leadership, have got to decide on the moment of the act of revolution."

"You mean that?" I interposed, excitedly.

Renn put his feet up on the opposite seat and regarded them for some time.

"There is one thing to which we must pay deep regard," he said.

Bob leaned forward. "And that is the Five Year Plan?" he suggested.

"You are quite right," said Renn. "In Germany we are ready for the revolutionary act," he went on after a pause. "We are not sure whether to lead the revolution this year or postpone it to the next. All will depend on whether we can or cannot employ suitable tactics. The party will consider the matter seriously."

"And you think you will make it the year after?" Bob suggested.

Renn nodded. "Yes," he said. "But no further. The German revolution will not wait after that."

"In my opinion," said Bob quietly, "revolution can only be timed within the given set of circumstances. You will be unwise to consider any other
conditions." He shook his head. "A revolution planned ahead like a trip to
the seaside is as daft and as futile as a revolution postponed. Your German
revolution will not wait for you and the party."

Writing all this down in full retrospect, it does not strike me as being
at all fantastic. The year was 1930. The German revolution stood upon some
order of some day. And Renn was not romancing.

I was working at my task in Bush House in the statistical department of
the Trade Delegation. My colleague was late in getting back from lunch. I
realised that something might have prevented her coming back when I recalled
that all the Russian employees had been asked to stay at their tables in
the dining room in the basement. That meant a private announcement.

When she came in she was somewhat excited.

I awaited her announcement.

"It has been decided in Moscow," she said. "The German revolution has been
postponed indefinitely. It is good for our Plan."

I bent my head and smiled. Poor Renn, I thought.

I was glad when I learned that he had been able to escape from Nazi
Germany.
which I carried about with me in a brief case I had been compelled to buy for just that one purpose. It was most interesting to find one's self a man of considerable substance, and at the same time a strange experience to find that it was nearly impossible to buy anything. In the store I handed out quite a sum to those resident in the country who were eager to buy and had no money.

I did discover a shop which sold brooches and the like made from Ural stone, topaz, and that kind of thing, and I was able to buy a few things for Phyllis. I bought a lady's coat made up of Siberian fox skin, and this I delighted to carry home. Phyllis was by no means impressed. She wore it once to Paris and once to the Persian Art Exhibition, and after that, when our daughter came, she whittled the poor thing into things for the cot and the pram.

At seven o'clock on the night of the banquet the taxicabs ranked outside the hotel to bear us off to the place where it was to be held. It was not in the Kremlin, for the journey was considerable and took us to the other side of the city. The night was bitterly cold. The building into which we were ushered was warm and brightly lit. In the hall there was a loud shedding of outer garments and galoshes.

The presiding officer at the banquet was old Felix Kohn, a tall, thin, well-coiffed Pole. His beard was barbered to a fine point. An old colleague of Lenin, he was held in great reverence by the crowd. Every Russian present who could communicate with us was eager to tell us the story of Kohn's escape from the death cell of some Tsarist prison. In Leningrad I had gone with Lydia Slonimsky to see a film which depicted the episode. My interest had been captured by the leading actress in that film, the widow of Anton Chekhov, Olga Knipper-Chekhova.

Felix Kohn was well-beloved of the Bolsheviks and could afford to be good-humoured as well as humorous. He greeted us all most gravely as we passed before him. He took no offence when the puppet-master reproduced him, whiskers and all, at the show after we had been replenished.

We took our appointed places at the tables, which were laden with food.

Particularisation was absent from the ceremony — and, indeed, it was a ceremony of guzzling — but there was the top table at which were gathered
the most important stomachs. We all sat down before the vast collation, of what I took to be all the food we would get but which proved to be the merest of hors d'oeuvres of the banquet, in deep wonderment. It was spread over the tables and piled high above us on huge contraptions which held three tiers each of appetising tittivations. One wondered just what those men and women we had seen on the construction sites would have said had they been able to witness such an abandon of abundance.

I leaned over to Bob. "Is this possible?" I asked him. "What must we do?"
"Just eat and be thankful," he replied, and added: "It's more than I expected."

"What did you expect?"
He shrugged. "We're in Russia," he said.
"But what about all the folk outside?" I cried. "Aren't they constructing this Russia? What about all those people stamping down the cement at the dam?"
He took food on to his plate. "Eat and be merry," he said. "Why worry? Eat so that tomorrow we can both have diarrhoea."

Thus comforted, I ate.

When all the magnificent things that were preliminary to the actual feast were partially consumed, the decks were cleared for the actual meal. Jacketed waiters dashed about, and the banquet began. The waiters brought new crockery and real food. Real soup. Normality had come to the dining hall. Fish, white and tasty fish. Fowl. By that time I had had enough.

The waiter brought the head waiter, a stern, commanding man. "Why do you not eat?" he demanded of me in Russian.

I understood what he said, for I had been in Russia long enough to understand short, simple sentences. I put my hand on my stomach and grimaced.

There was a short conversation above my head and the man departed.

The gavanteau meal wandered through its courses to the very end. The belshings and the teeth pickings followed while the waiters scampered off with the crockery and cutlery. The entertainers moved in. A soprano, vast of bust, and good in voice, came out of the Bolshoi to regale us with song. One song was a translation of a poem by Burns. I recognised neither song nor poem, but I acknowledged the tribute to the poet. And, accordingly, all about
me smiled. Most of them took me to be a Scotman.

The tenor sang well, but the base over-topped him as an executant. He, too, was from the Bolshoi, of almost the same majestic presence as that of Chaliapin. He had a pronounced limp, poor man. Something gained in the war. Then came the puppet man, and joy was complete.

Heavy snow had covered Moscow by the time we left the banqueting hall. The driver of our cab often found himself in grave difficulty. We skidded a little more than somewhat, so to speak. The extremely cold air sought its own sanctuary in our cab. Winter was moving towards the city on swift wings. We were glad to escape to the warmth of the hotel.

I expected to receive my tickets for my journey back to England the day after the banquet, and so I felt eager to do what Mark Volossov had suggested and that was to pay a visit to the great cathedral on the other side of the river Moskva. After breakfast I walked to St. Basil and from there went down to the river side to walk the great length of the Kremlin Wall. I paused often in my journey to regard the lovely buildings that peeped over the wall, as well as that of St. Basil, to see how they were greeting yet another winter. St Basil always looks strangely beautiful, no matter what point of vantage one views it from. How it must have clung to its own exquisite existence without a shade of its own from all the rigours of Russia's weather. Walking had to be done slowly, for there had been a considerable fall of new snow. It interested me to note that most of the wheels of carts, droshkies and perambulators had been exchanged for runners. It was somewhat unfortunate for the horses when they had to cross a bare patch of roadway. The women merely carried the pram!

I crossed the river and found the cathedral, but I might have saved myself the trouble of the journey, for it was undergoing either a major repair or a preparation for destruction. All the ikons had been removed and a great tumult filled the vast sanctorum. I would have liked to have searched the place, for I found that it possessed a second floor. Men were working there quite noisily. I went out into the cold and made my way back to the hotel.

Arrived there I was informed that I was to stay in Moscow for the "prot-
cess" that was to take place. I was not asked to stay; I was simply told to
stay. I was to report the proceedings.

When I told Bob he merely smiled. "It's you who are staying and it is
me who is going home," he said.

After lunch I had a visitor.

He came to my room alone. He was a man in the middle thirties. He was
well dressed for a Russian. The out of his clothes was not Russian at all.
He was cropped close and possessed a mustache. He was otherwise clean shaven.
I was struck by the physical resemblance he had for Zamyatin, dressed and
ciiffered like him, brisk and clear of enunciation like him.

"My name," he said, "is Rosanov, Mikhail Rosanov. Being English, you
wont want my patronymic. I am a writer, and I write under the name of Ognov.
Perhaps you have heard of me. I am the author of The Diary of a Communist
Schoolboy and The Diary of a Communist Undergraduate. Both books were pub-
lished in London by Victor Gollancz."

"I am aware of that," I said. "I have read them." And with that I held
out my hand, and we shook heartily.

"I believe the first book sold well," he went on. "I am not sure about
the second one."

I told him that both had had a good press, and that they must have sold
well. But, I added, I am not aware of the sales at all. He assured me that
they had done well in America as well as in London.

The day was November 20th, 1930.

We drank tea.

"I am fully aware of the fact that I cannot make any claim on Gollancz
for earned royalties," he told me. "And I am not asking him to pay me anything
from what his company has earned. The law of copyright and that kind of
thing puts authors in both England and Russia in a quandary."

"Then, perhaps you will tell me what you want, Mr. Rosanov," I said.

"You see, it is like this," he said. "Gollancz sold the rights in both
my novels to an American publisher, as he was entitled to do under your law.
But he has kept the royalties he received, which were due to me from the
The Diary of a Communist Schoolboy
and
The Diary of a Communist Undergraduate.

I am in possession of a number of press cuttings from the British and American press concerning these books.

So far I have not received any remuneration from you in regard to my books.

I also understand from a mutual friend that the American publication rights were obtained from you by Messrs Payson and Bright, and that the necessary royalties were paid to you in the prescribed manner by these publishers.

I wish to stress the fact that I am due to some remuneration from you in regard to these two books, both from the English editions and the American editions. So far I have not received anything. It may interest you to know that I have received royalties from the publishers of various translations of my books, German, Spanish, Greek, etc.

Will you please undertake to remit me the cash due to me through the Bank for Russian Trade, Moorgate, London.

Yours faithfully,
N. Ognyov
(M.C. Rosanov.)

I showed Harold Shaylor the letter when I got back to London. He read it most carefully before he returned it to me. "My advice to you on this matter," he said, "is keep as far away from Colmanos as you can. I know what I would do if that letter were brought to me by you. I would show you the door, and I would not be very polite with you."

I buried the letter among my papers. Some years later, after Mikhail Sholokov had shown me the two guns he had bought with some of the royalties he had received from Putnams for his Tikki Dom, and how pleased Mr. Ragg had been to help him choose the lovely things. I suppose it was just a matter of a publisher's ethic.

The state trial of the members of the Industrial Party was held in the vast Hall of Columns in Dom Soyugov, the great building near the Bolshoi Theatre wherein the Soviet government exposes its great dead. There the body of Lenin had lain.

The presiding judge was the hitherto unknown Bolshevik called Vyshinsky. He had for his assessors a Red Army officer and an ordinary working man who,
throughout the entire proceedings, paid no attention to his dreadful beard. The prisoners, Ramzin, Karpov, Professor Fedotov, Kallinikov, Tchernovsky, Larichev, Kondratov and Tohaigmov, were to be prosecuted by the Krylenko who had been close to Lenin during the 1917 revolution.

It was not suggested that I should report the trial, for I was not connected with any English newspaper. When I got to the meeting of the correspondents, which was chaired by none other than Bela Kun, I found that the Daily Worker was fully represented. I felt that somehow I was being asked to attend the trial in order to carry out some duty, but to this day I have not learned even the truth of that suggestion. Personally, I could not see any point in my staying throughout the long process of judgment, but I made no objection. If I went home I would have to start looking for a job, and I did not relish signing on at the Employment Exchange in Walworth Road. I wrote to my wife and explained what I proposed to do. There was much to interest me in watching from so secure a vantage point how the soviet system of justice really worked, and I felt that that would be much more to my advantage than being at home and watching the MacDonald Labour Government fading into shame.

All the American delegates except John Herman and his wife were given mandates to enter the Hall of Commons, and I took comfort from that because I knew that they were all as remote from newspapers in America as I was from those in England. We were housed in the same hotel. I shared a room with Michael Gold. I found him to be an easily tetchy man, most difficult to get on with. I was glad when he started a liaison with the daughter of a German technician, and moved down the corridor into a room of their own. The inevitable happened and the father was most cross, for she was a fine girl.

Gold was the veritable hero of the Russians. Those who have read Daniel Aaron's interesting book, *Writers of the Left*, will be fully aware of the depth of the rapport that existed between Moscow and the writer. Gold was a dark, slim, medium-sized Jew. He could have been taken for anything except a prominent proletarian writer. There was always acid in his pen. He was quick and clever, one of America's great journalists. I read his novel, *Jews Without Money* while I was in Moscow. I found it telling of a life far
away, aeons distant, from the life I had lived. It seemed to me to be an epic of the ghetto where only the women slaved, where the male halted outside the entrance to the factory and slunk back amongst the malefactors.

The trial opened in the House of the Soviets. The weather had turned bleak and raw. I was given a place at the reporters' table that ran below the entire length of the stage upon which Justice sat enthroned in red. A translator was assigned to each national group. Ours was one of Russia's top perovochiks, Joe Fineberg, a man who must have lost count of the volumes of Lenin and the Russian intelligentsia he has translated. Those who spoke Russian sat almost underneath the chair upon which Krylenko sat, and from which he sprang to toy with his victims with that lack of mercy which would have ashamed Judge Jeffries.

It was a vast hall which seated a vast audience. The places in the galleries were occupied by the diplomats and their wives. The stage held and housed the main features of the trial. In the centre, enthroned in an elaborate high chair, sat Vyshinsky. On lesser chairs, one on each side of him, sat his assessors. Before them a fine table. In front of the judges sat the clerical officers of the court. There was no clerk such as is found in an English court of law. There were many stenographers. To the left of the judge, near the edge of the stage, sat Krylenko and his assistant attorney. On the opposite side, as a counterbalance to the decor, sat the two counselors acting for the accused. Along the wall, behind these defence counsel — though what they defended has never been made plain to me — was the dock, under guards with fixed bayonets.

The three judges did not appear until the prisoners were safely housed in their dock, poor, bewildered, unhappy men. The court rose when the well-dressed, well-groomed Vyshinsky took his seat alongside with his co-adjutors. All three lit their cigarettes when the reading of the charge was begun. Three clerks undertook this job in relays of ten or fifteen minutes' duration. They read on and on, and interminably on. They did not reach the end until the night had almost worn to its close and the crowd had grown miserable. Finished at long last, Vyshinsky asked each in turn how he pleaded, and each replied that he was not guilty. This over, the cigarettes were stubbed and
the judges rose and departed. The prisoners were taken away under the same
guard. The great hub-bub arose as the crowd streamed away.

The trial was conducted in two sessions each day. The first began at
10.30 and the second at 6 p.m. The duration of each session was three hours.

There was a room beyond the court area where most of the reporting was
finalised and passed to the censor, and where orders for the next day were
laid down. Those reporters of known sympathy for the communist press, went
regularly to that room to receive undercover information and direction. Every
thing written for the press had to be scrutinised. A host of typists was
available to carry out the typing, always in five copies. Once typed the
author did not see his script again. Beyond that room the fate of all copy
was sealed or sanctioned. The presiding genius was Bela Kun, a formidable
figure who rested sumptuously in Moscow on the proud remembrance of an abort-
ive revolution in Roumania. He was a middle sized man, officious, brisk of
decision, imperative. He it was who gave impressive orders whenever any dam-
aging piece of evidence came out in the trial that implicated any person any-
where within the borders of the Soviet Union. Men and women literally fled
from his presence once given their instructions.

In due time he received me into his presence. He spoke in German. Robin
Page Arnott accompanied me and did the translating. I suggested a descriptive
article for the New Leader, then under the editorship of Henry Noel Brailsford
and to this he agreed. He told me to write the script under the tutelage of
Page Arnott and indicated to me the girl who would prepare it for despatch
— to the censor. Beyond that I had nothing to suggest about journalising on
the trial. I had to wait on the girl for the typing. The article was front
paged in the New Leader, possibly because I had secured the services of
the American cartoonist to do a drawing of Bannin, the leader of the conspir-
acy. Maisky read it in Helsinki and wrote me, stating his surprise at my
being in the Soviet Union. He said he would have wished me to postpone my
visit there.

I attended the trial sedulously. The trial wound on and on. The morning
session was generally humdrum, as if the big things were reserved for the
night session when the workers could sit back and listen in their homes.
The audience was changed at every session. Tickets of admission were obtained through the channels of the party or the trade union. It was not until the buzz of excitement and comment had died down resulting from the identification of the prisoners, that the court room came to orderly auditory conditions.

Soviet trials are carried on by confrontation. Should a prisoner implicate or even mention a fellow prisoner under cross examination, that prisoner was immediately brought forward and made to affirm, or reject, or dispute the tendered evidence. Should he, in his defence, and quite unhelped by his counsel, implicate another prisoner, he, too, was brought to the stand and submit himself to the same process. I saw four, sometimes five miserable prisoners arguing and gesticulating at the stand, and always much to the sardonic amusement of Krylenko.

It was indeed a most strange affair. All through its long process, which spilled over into the second week, not one interjection was made by either of the two defending counsel. All they did was to sit down at their table and remain as immobile as stuffed dolls. Not once did they offer any protest, or intervene to help or instruct their clients; nor did they go to the dock in order to give guidance or hold any conversation with the prisoners. It was an affair in which no one addressed the accused men except Krylenko or his assistant. Throughout the process Vyshinsky maintained an abstracted stance, spruce and upright, unmindful of the men who lingered before him on their lives. Never was judgment more foregone, more fugitive and inevitable, and more pitiless.

There was that moment when an officer led into the court a witness, one of the few brought in from outside. We had been apprised of the fact that he was to appear, and that he would come from a distant concentration camp to which he had been condemned some years previously. He proved to be a little man, tired, worn and naked to the further condemnation of his peers for his acts, unkempt, doing his best to savour his own moment of freedom. He was brought into court through the centre of the packed assembly. I think that he savoured their hostility. As he passed down the gangway he broke into a trot in his eagerness to get to the witness stand, almost stumbling against Krylenko.
He waited almost breathlessly for Krylenko's first question. He was not sworn. He was addressed by his name. He spoke garrulously in answer to each question that was put to him. In the end Krylenko spoke to the officer in a tone of awful contempt. "Take the fool away," he said.

The day eventually arrived when Krylenko was called upon to make his summation of the evidence and utter his demands. It was anticipated that it would be a tour-de-force, and so it proved. It was one such as the Soviet courts had not known. The spirit of Dostoevsky's magistrate did not hover over that court. That Krylenko had some pity in his make-up could be assumed whenever he took apart the evidence of the old, almost blind, tottering Fedotov. Perhaps he had the idea that the old man would not bow to the sentence he would be given.

There had been that moment when he had rasped out at the poor old man: "Tell us. Tell us, please. Did you believe that the interventionists would help you to overthrow the Soviet power merely out of their charity? That they would have no motive other than that?" In his speech he recalled that dreadful moment, when the poor old man shaded his eyes against the sunlight and said, "Such was my belief at first."

I can still hear his shriek. "At first! At first! But after?"

And then that fateful confession: "Subsequently I realised that either Karpov, with whom I had a conversation in Berlin, had deceived me in telling me that the interventionists did not want anything for themselves, or that Ramzin had also deceived me when he told me the same...." He became confused. "....." or perhaps both Ramzin and Karpov had been themselves deceived....or that,....later....they had both been deceived by the interventionists...."

And that bitter smile that spread across the prosecutor's face when he said, rather gently: "Very well, accused Fedotov. Very well. Let us dismiss the question of who deceived whom, shall we? Or whether you were deceived by Karpov and Ramzin, or they by the interventionists. Let us dismiss it as irrelevant, shall we?" And that sneering leaning forward towards the old man and the quiet assertion: "And shall we just say that you were a fool, shall we?"
And then the silence during which the old fellow bowed to his interlocutor and to his own soul.

There was nothing impressive about Krylenko. He was always clad in khaki, more like a British infantryman of the first world war. Sometimes he wore puttees, and sometimes worsted stockings. The belt of his khaki coat was always untied, and the ends flapped against his hips. He looked a most vicious man. But was he? He took his duties seriously and he carried them out to the moment. When Stalin dismissed him and, later, sent him along the same short via dolorosa that he had sent so many of his compatriots. Was he without mercy? Most undoubtedly. Was he an orator? Yes, a Russian orator, lacking all the verve and reserve of an Edmund Burke. He did not rant. Was he a showman. He was, precisely. That day on which he delivered his speech and demanded the death penalty for all the prisoners, he was the attorney supreme. He did not address the court, but his audience, and he made it the instrument upon which he played a fateful tune. He wheedled, he stormed, he made his audience laugh like any politician on the hustings, and he forced them to ejaculate their rage. He swayed his willing host as a wind sways a bed of rushes. They leaned forward, intent upon hearing every word, fearful of missing any of the flavour of the least important sentence. His voice rose almost to a scream when he uttered the names of the chief of the accused, especially Ramzin. It was always a little softer when he mentioned Fedotov, for the old man was pitiful in his own dire distress.

My mind often returns to that trial to recall Fedotov. He sat next to Ramzin, the youngish Ramzin. He was a man who owned his own great span of years as well as a considerable bulk of flesh. He had grown old after a gentle ageing, white of hair, deficient of sight, pitiful beyond degree in his appointment with his shame. He never recovered from the shock of his sentence. I was glad for him when Kola Minski told me that he had committed suicide. How that poor, deluded old man cowered under the blistering indictment which Krylenko hurled at him through a willing audience.

Krylenko reminded me most forcibly of a salesman in the Bigg Market in Newcastle, only he was selling the death he purloined from his own hatred, not a cure for baldness or rheumatism.
not a cure for baldness or rheumatism. Poor, strange, deluded Krylenko, the man who loved to climb mountains. Elbrus was his playground until the state he had served so laboriously snatched it away from him...a whole mountain.

"It has been most truly stated by Lenin," he thundered, "that our state is already no state, that it has not and cannot have anything in common with the old bourgeois state, that our state is already the transitional form from the State to the Non-State, to the broadest democratic self-government of the toiling masses. And our method of checking up from below constitutes the practical method whereby we shall most speedily and most assuredly frustrate all the wrecking plots of our enemies."

No, there was no stopping this Krylenko, for he was in full flood. Sitting there and listening, did Vishinsky catch the ideas streaming from the lips of the public prosecutor which he would later publish as his own? Krylenko demanded the death penalty for all his prisoners. He did not exclude Fedotov. And he justified his demand with words which brought his audience, shrieking, applauding, to its feet.

"There is but one motive by which the Soviet authorities may and should be guided, and by which this proletarian court must be guided, and that is the motive of the safety of the Soviet Union, and of rendering the enemies of our land innocuous."

Towards the end of his speech he became prophetic, more prophetic than ever thought he could be, more truly prophetic. Pausing as if to draw an immense breath, he rapped out:

"When a new tide is rising, yes, when new clouds are gathering on the horizon, when perhaps in the near future the masses of our people will have to stand up for the defence of our country. At such a time it will be necessary to sweep away everything which aided the old order of things."

I stood, shuddered to the core of my being, all through that ghastly pantomime until the little man resumed his seat, and then I went out of that court room deeply humiliated, leaving the crowd to roar its own approval.

There is but one other moment of that trial to record. It was on the occasion when Remzin told the court how and when he had met Winston Churchill in the offices of Siemens. I was instantly reminded that that firm had a
big factory in the centre of a vast area of ploughed land between the main
road from the Elephant and Castle to Woolwich and the river. I knew it well.

"You mean their office in London?" suggested Krylenko.

"No," replied Ramzin. "I mean the office of their factory near Woolwich."

I became sceptical from that moment. During that trial I heard quite
enough. I felt that the Soviet leaders had swopped the great analysis of
capitalism for the dialectical reasoning on all error. I confess that when I
listened to Krylenko expatiating on the subject of the dialectical process of
sabotage I was more than a little non-plussed. I doubted if Winston Churchill
even knew of that factory in the fields always under root crops.
During the last week of the trial there was a massive parade of people through the streets of Moscow demanding death for the traitors. The night on which the parade was held was cold and soggy. The snow was not fully hardened for the winter. All roads that were open led to and beyond the Dom Soyusov, the scene of the trial. I left my hotel intending, if possible, to make my way to the trial without joining the slow column of marchers. As I walked I heard a band approaching which was playing a slow march such as that which we miners had our colliery band play when we escorted the corpse of one of our comrades who had met his death in the pit, to the cemetery. I waited upon the approach of the marchers with some interest, although it was very cold.

Above the noise of the instruments I could hear, as they approached, the wailings of the mourners. I moved to a street lamp to find out as much as I could about this strange intrusion upon the vast march of protest that was invading the quiet night of the city.

The band preceded a contraption unlike any hearse I had ever seen. It had almost a fret work character. On the open platform lay the open coffin. The head of the corpse was raised so that all who cared could view it as it passed. It was the head of a young man. A screaming girl, roughly supported and escorted by two young men, was, obviously, the widow. I was torn between two impulses, whether to go on to the trial or follow the cortege. I still regret my choice, which was to attend at the court of Krylenko. I found my usual way blocked by soldiers. Beyond the street guard the horses stamped their disapprovals of the night. The officer asked me the reason for my wanting to walk along
a street which had been closed for the purpose of controlling the parade. The officer had a smattering of English, and to him I showed my mandat for the trial.

"Anglichannin?" he asked as he handed me back my pass.
"Yes, I am," I said.
"You speak the Russian?" he asked.
"Ochen ploxo," I told him, at which he and his squad laughed as if they had heard a joke.

They passed me through the barrier. I underwent the same pantomime some four times before I arrived at the venue of the trial.

Inside, the journalists were estimating the numbers of the marchers. When one suggested half a million there was a loud protest. Later, when the figure was given officially as three millions not one of them demurred. The trial did not end with the speech of the prosecutor.

The time had come at last to the two silent defence counsellors. I watched them with interest. They bowed to the court. They almost apologised to the court. They spoke at some length. Nobody troubled to translate their speeches. What did it matter, anyway?

Then came the turns of the prisoners to make their pleas for mercy. Ramzin spoke to some length. Others spoke quietly. Old man Fedotov stumbled in his speech over his tears and the officer of the guard led him back to his seat, gently, as one leads a child. All reflected on their misdeeds. Each man must have felt servile as he returned to the dock.

The prisoners were led away. The judges had to consider their verdict. Next night the court gathered for the last time.

Joe Fineberg explained to me that the judgment would have to be given in accordance with the criminal code in every one of its appropriate details. It would be typed and Vyshinsky would read from that. He would not make any comment on the trial. He prophesied that we would have to wait a considerable time before sentences were declared.

Midnight boomed over the quiet city.
It was after one a.m. before the prisoners were brought into the court room. Krylenko and his comrade emerged, as did the two defence counsel. When all was set the court rose, and Vishinsky and his two assessors took their places, but did not sit down.

When all was quiet Vishinsky began to read from the papers he held in his hands. He read on and on, without pause. The court stood upright, and the time drifted over it, sombrely. The first hour of his reading passed and the second hour began to spill out its long minutes. On and on went the clipped, meticulous voice.

The audience gasped with relief when he intimated that he would now pronounce sentence in accordance with the decision of the court. He paused before he sentenced Ramzin to death.

We all stood while he sentenced the main figures to death. Compassion came to two, the compassion of long and servile hours.

A cheer broke out, only to be hushed.

The prisoners were guided away, stunned and affrighted, like all who have received the doom of death.

Outside the night was viciously cold. We walked into it and stumbled through it.

As I walked along the long road at the side of the Red Square my soul was as cold and as dense as the stones upon which I walked. I was alone. The Americans had gone on into their own silence. I stood opposite the Lenin Mausoleum and gazed upon the scene. The great red wall bounded up and about the sleeping Kremlin, comforting in its own stony silence the famous dead sleeping within it near its base. The mausoleum reflected the light that enveloped the tower above the gateway. All was red and dull. The five pointed star was pricked out in white light. Beyond, one of the churches raised itself almost on tip toe to look over the wall and upon the city now lying silent in its own agonies and its own slumbers. At the far end of the square St Basil loitered in its own incredible magnificence, unmindful of any terror of the human soul, unaware that it had witnessed over vast stretches of time the barbaric acts and scenes, and the fact that it still heightened the beauty that somehow clad the whole city.
The cold was intense. The snow had fallen, and it was freezing. The air stung my face with the points of many needles. Unmindful, I stood and looked into my own being. I had passed through a tremendous experience. I wondered why fate, or luck, or fortune had lifted me out of the desecrated bowels of the old earth below far away Durham, and set me down in this unimaginable Moscow. Why? To Moscow, with its millions of faces, with its seeming contempt for the necessities of correct human judgment. I seemed to be transfixed, bewildered, thrust beyond astonishment. I had been now almost three months in Russia and I had been shown precisely nothing that could have liberated me from my own nagging doubts. Was it all real? Had we all acted like rational human beings when we had watched the agonies and the distresses of those now condemned men? I was a stranger in a world beyond my own belief. But where was I?

Beyond, in the outer regions of mankind, there were the silent trumpetings proclaiming the proletarian messianic world. We had all been tempted into admiration, if not love. But where was it? Was the world of the dreamers to be found only in Russia? And if they were, what had they changed? Back in England Ramsay MacDonald, Philip Snowden and Arthur Henderson, were hanging on to a goodly lump of parliamentary power, and there was hope that they would change some of the decadent capitalist world, where the chance to create the commodities was withheld from all those who possessed the one creative commodity, human labour-power. All that was asked was a full five years of power.

And here, thirteen years of actual power had been granted, and where was the change? People in the mass were still imprisoned in the silence of poverty still under the reproof of the superior persons, who banquetted without shame and rode in beautifully upholstered railway carriages. I looked beyond Dostoievsky into the book by Henri Barbusse, Chains, a man I had yet to meet, and I recalled what he had therein written: "Not to change all is to change nothing."

I remembered meeting Bertrand Russell at Newcastle Central Station and conducting him to a meeting in South Shields which he was to address. He noted the book I carried, H.G. Wells, Russia in the Shadows. "I was in Russia when he was there,"
Russia when he was there," he told me. "What a frightened little man he was. He was always coming to me and advising me to get out of the country as soon as I could. 'I'm going;' he would say. 'The revolution will break out any moment now. If you want to save your neck, Russell, you'd better pack and come with me.'"

I felt terribly cold.

I walked past the Cathedral of St. Basil and left it standing on its own frozen site to dream on into the future.

I was still cold long after I got into my bed.
The man from Intourist brought me my tickets for the journey back to England, and these, I found, routed me through Warsaw, Berling, Paris and Calais to London. I asked him why they had not included Rome in my itinerary, but he failed to appreciate my joke. I told him that I did not look forward to a long overland journey and if it were at all possible I would prefer to return the way I had come. He went away and came back with the information that the last ship which would depart from the Leningrad would be leaving in three days' time, and that if I joined the ship, the S.S. Soviet, I would be able to travel supercargo. He gave me a soft class ticket from Moscow to Leningrad.

I spent my last evening in Moscow in the home of Mikhail Zenkevitch and all his family, which seemed to include a goodly amount of family relations who were sharing his space. The next evening Mark Volosov escorted me to the station and saw me safely into a soft class cabin, which I had to share with an American engineer, his wife and his daughter, and a huge dog. It was an interesting journey, for the engineer had many caustic criticisms to make of his late employers. Passenger trains between the two capital cities in those days only ran at night. There was none of the romance of Anna Karenina on that train. We were all soon asleep, even the huge dog. Arrived in Leningrad I was met by my old guide, and she took me back to the Hotel Europa, which had by then changed over to Winter accommodation.

The weather was extraordinarily cold. On the barometers outside the hotel the three types, Remur, Centigrade and Fahrenheit stood very low on each scale,
and offered their own individual readings, which perplexed my guide. The entire city had taken on its initial coating of ice, and this was thick and slippery. Logistics were accordingly much disturbed. All things seemed to shiver.

The vessel would not be ready to sail for more than three days. I was not sorry, for this gave me a chance to see more of the city. Under instructions I set off to buy a fur hat, but I might as well have saved myself the task. There were no fur hats in Leningrad for sale. I took a chance to visit Detskoi Selo, the country palaces of the Tsars, but after that I refused further rubbing & necking and stayed in the hotel. I shall never be so cold as I was on that day. We drove in a droshky many miles from some wayside station to the palaces, and we drove the same number of miles back to the station in the same droshky. Since then I have always pitied the fictional characters in Russian literature who made droshky journeys in the depth of winter. The Russians must be superhuman to stand the rigours of such cold.

The great palace of the Empress Catherine was open and I was conducted over it in the conditions of deep freeze in a refrigeration plant. To say that it was bitterly cold is to praise the place. The old crone who let us in made us put on overshoes of felt. I blessed her for them. We saw all the rooms and all the expensive decore. It was coldest in the ball room, for the place was vast. The ceiling was painted after the fashion of rooms with ceiling paintings. The passage along which we walked reached from end to end of the building, and each room led off to that passage. The dwellers in that place must have been of heroic mould.

The more modern establishment of the last Tsar was open, and, luckily, heated. There was nothing one could wish to see other than the elaborate bath and the fly whisk of the empress which lay on her table. And yet I lingered, fearful of the ride back to the station. It proved to be the most wearisome and the coldest journey on earth. Sitting in that ambling droshky I felt that my ears might fall off. As for my toes.....

I did not see Dostoevsky's grave. That is my one regret.

When we arrived on the frozen dock at night the ship was fully illuminated
The race was against the freeze-up. They appeared to be taking aboard a cargo of carpets and textiles. Why, I do not know. After a long wait inside the taxi and in the crushing cold I was taken aboard the little vessel. She was of a thousand tons burden.

Inside the vessel it was warm. The sudden change in temperature made me feel a little unsure of myself. The immigration authorities, who appeared to be present in force, waited until I had thawed out. They were all excessively uniformed gentlemen. The one who searched my baggage did it with great care. I have little recollection of the answers I gave to their questions. Their main concern was to know if I had any Russian money in my possession. They carefully counted the roubles which I exposed and filled in the requisite documents.

The chief officer handed me a receipt for the money. "You must take this document to the Moscow Narodny Bank in Moorgate, London," he told me, "and you will be refunded in valuta."

I sincerely believe that the man believed what he was saying. I need not have troubled even to make the journey from Kennington to Moorgate. The clerk to whom I spoke merely asked me if I was trying to perpetrate a joke.

I signed all their papers. I said good-bye to my guide. An old man came and escorted me to my cabin. Later he brought me an exquisite glass of tea and left me to get into bed. I found a copy of Dickens' Pickwick Papers. I enjoyed reading it again. I continued to read it at the height of the storm.

The steward took me under his care for the rest of the voyage. The next morning he brought me tea and told me that I would take my meals with the Kapitan. I went up to the saloon and breakfasted alone.

After breakfast the ship cast off and the engines began to throb. I went out on deck to see what was happening. The cold almost choked me. I stayed in the lee of some structure to watch the amazing sights. The harbour was one dense sheet of ice. It clung to the superstructures of the vessel in icicles reaching almost to the deck from a thickness of a man's body to a long point. The ropes were encased in ice. The deck was a sheet of thick ice. The vessel was held upon a great waste of ice. What interested me was that we were
actually moving. I went forward and discovered that we were following an ice-breaker. I lost all sense of cold as I watched that powerful vessel force a passage through that tranquil mass of white. There came movement forward, then a pause, a tremendous shuddering of the vessel and then a loud crack as the ice broke under the enormous force exerted upon it, which made the cracks speed ahead through the massed ice and peter out beyond the zone of the force. The powerful engines broke the track through the ice to the next point of force, and our little vessel followed as foal might his dam.

Progress was slow and deliberate. Our vessel kept close in the wake of the ice-breaker. As the morning wore on progress became easier, and there came a moment when the vessel sheared aside, gave a loud roar of farswell and left us to go our own way into the Gulf of Finland. Leningrad fell astern like a beautiful ghost that had stayed into a white sea.

Had I known what awaited me I would have taken the long journey across Europe to England. Here I was, summercarg on a small vessel which was moving into a fearful storm, which did not abate for almost three days. The waves tossed us about as easily as any piece of flotsam. We toiled over mountainous waves and tumbled into troughs of the most fearsome depths. The engines raced at speed until the propeller found the water again. The noise of the storm excluded all things. During that time I did not see the skipper, for he did not leave his bridge. There was one whole day when I did not leave my bunk, much to the distress of the old man who was mightily pleased when I accepted a glass of tea.

"Koshite, tovarish?" he almost pleaded. When I shook my head he hung his head and departed.

Eventually the storm abated, and there came a meal when I made the acquaintance of the captain. He looked utterly worn out, big and robust as he was. I still hold him in my memory and admire him.

During that meal he said to me, "Crick-ett...kak etta?"
I was surprised.
He smiled and went on with his meal.
A little later he said another word which interested me. It was
"Douglass."

I remained mystified until we got to Kiel. The man who hawked his dirty postcards through the passing ships told me that they had not expected a small vessel like the Soviet to get through the storm. "The Finnish vessel sank with all hands," he went on. "There was an English cricketer aboard, called Douglass."

"You mean J. H. T. Douglass?" I asked incredulously.

"Might be him," said the man.

So that was it. Poor Johnny-Wont-Hit-today was drowned. What a fate!

How often had I watched him play at the Oval.

The last of the ice disappeared from the superstructure of the vessel as we crossed the North Sea. We docked at Hull late on a Saturday evening. I left the vessel the next evening and caught the train to Kings Cross.

It was bitterly cold.

Back in London, dreary, unfriendly London I emptied my pockets into the palm of a taximan, a few shillings and a few coppers. He reckoned it all up and took me to the Elephant and Castle, and dropped me. I had a suitcase and a folio of reproductions of some of the famous pictures in Russia which had been given to me by the manager of Moscow Kniga. I walked heavily along Newington Butts and up Kennington Park Road. I reached the square and came to my own door.

Phyl opened the door in response to my knock. She was half asleep. Tom, my brother, heard the commotion and joined us in the kitchen. We talked while the kettle came to the boil. We had a nice cup of tea and then went to bed.

The morning came. Phyl and Tom went off to work. And I was back.

There was nothing I could do but go down to Walworth Road Employment Exchange and make an application for unemployment benefit. Nothing had changed during my absence, except that the long snakes of men stretching from the usual parts of the counter had grown longer. Tired and bored clerks dealt with each man in turn. Insurance card in hand the clerk went to the files, withdrew my claim, and came back to me at the counter. Armed at last with my £1. 40, my little yellow card, I made my way back home and sat down to think.
I had returned from a strange world to one even stranger, a world of literal death from one of illiterat life. The contrast between what was recognised in the parlance of the Left as "the two worlds" was not so stark as to be beyond discussion. The accent in both worlds was placed upon the verb "to work", and, therefore, the difference was easily observed. In England the opportunity to work was denied to millions of proletarians by sheer economic depression while in Russia the opportunity to escape from the opportunity to drudge in the interests of socialism was being denied to millions of proletarians by sheer economic oppression. It was distressing to be forced to acknowledge the commodity nature of labour-power in a sluggish capitalist market, but to have to acknowledge the same commodity nature in a communist sellers' buying market was not only distressing, but annihilating. If the opportunity to work, to exercise the muscles and intelligence within some unimportant niche in some project for a minimum ration of life-renewing substance, was the new criterion for proletarian existence, then there was no more to be said in justification of what was going on in Soviet Russia than there was for that in Britain where the commodity was over-provided and consequently abandoned to prodigious waste. If the getting out of bed in the morning, the gulping down of "breakfast" in the room, or the corner of some room, the shuffling over the distance between one's habitation and one's place of work, and the following of a work-routine over a long stretch of time, measured in hours and calculated in minutes, constituted the be-all and end-all of existence, then there was very little difference between life in Moscow and life in London, where existence was scantily maintained in a slum and perpetrated in idleness. Could there be any difference in the two social systems where—in the sale of labour-power was governed within the conditions of near-famine and three parts of a loaf of black bread was regarded as adequate to maintain a proud working man and that condition of twilight existence wherein a dole contributed to the purchase of a loaf of white bread and little else?

My own disillusionment was now as complete as that of Bob Ellis, whom I had now to go and meet.

The following morning broke more cheerfully for me than ever seems to
have broken for George Gissing. Having washed up the breakfast things and put them away I went on one of my usual walks in that part of London which I had come to know intimately. Crossing the Kennington Road near the church I went on until I could turn down Walnut Tree Walk. It is strange how to the reader of Gissing his spirit hovers over that street which he gave to Thyrza. There were times when I explored that doleful part of Lambeth when I wondered if it was my own fate to relive the crucifixion of George Gissing. Perhaps it was my own ego refreshing itself on my own less poverty stricken existence. It must have been for I was merely I, and George Gissing was one of the greatest explorers of the soul.

Strangely enough it was there, in that doleful area, that I came to make the acquaintance of John Burns, that strange ghost from a proletarian world that never really got going. I still recall that well set-up figure, bearded like the old men of my youth, clad in his almost reefer jacket and trousers to match, pecking at his memories of the years that had gone. He took me aside one beautiful morning and showed me Karl Marx's cigar case, which Engels had given him some years before he died. He took me into the big roomy place near the railway arch which carries rail traffic over Kennington Road from Waterloo Station.

"This is where Engels coffin stood that morning," he said. "And this is where the great men cried. Especially Lafargue, a man I did not much care for. He was a great man, Engels."

There was always time enough for me to recall Thyrza, but never time to search for the exact dwelling. The incident of old Mr. Body's coat was still too sentimental an exercise to look for the house. I always found the street a place wherein to quicken my foot steps before entering Lambeth Walk and getting beyond its screaming poverty, its tumults, its people almost exhausted of hope.

I felt it even more so on the occasion when I had to attend the coroner's court and take my place as foreman of a jury called to enquire into the death of a man who had been murdered. Mr. Ingleby Odie presided over the macabre proceedings and Sir Bernard Spilsbury spoke to us all at great length and
in the most magisterial tones I had ever heard.

On this particular morning I crossed Lambeth Bridge and went down the slope into the gardens, there to walk to my chosen point where I could gaze upon Rodin's Six Burghers of Calais, that most impressive, and at that time the worst sited piece of sculpture in all England. My trance was broken when a voice spoke to me.

"Haven't I seen you in Princes Square?" I heard him say.

He was older and a little taller than myself, middle aged, a man without a troubled muscle, more like a bird than a man, flooded with the moods and the manners of a Glaswegian.

"You may have," I returned. "I live there."

"That's why I asked," he said. "I've missed you. My name is Clark, John S. Clark. I'm a member of parliament. I have a couple of rooms in Princes Square. Why haven't I seen you all these weeks?"

"But isn't parliament in recess?" I countered.

"It is," he replied. "But London is so full of opportunities to make money, I just couldn't tear myself away. I'll be up there for the New Year, of course. But you haven't answered my question?"

"As a matter of fact, I have just got back from Russia," I said.

"You have! Now isn't that strange!" He almost pulled me on to a nearby chair. "Sit down," he cried. "Sit down. Leningrad?"

I nodded. "I went to Kharkov...."

"The Conference. Are you a writer?"

"Couple of novels," I confessed.

"I write, too," he said. He laughed swiftly. "You'll be like us all," he went on. "You'll have to live a lot of your stuff down. Do you know that Ramsay MacDonald reviewed a book of poems I once put out...favourably? It took me some time to get over the shock. Know the book, a wee red one,"

"I treasure it," I told him.

How we laughed. We became friends from that moment to that one when he left London to fight a Glasgow seat, and lost. I never met him again.

"I was in Russia shortly after the revolution," he told me. "I met Lenin often. I have quite a few of the notes he slipped over to me when he was
listening to a debate and getting ready to reply. I was with Willie Gallagher. Now I am a member of parliament." He stood up. "Look at me," he said, "the permanent pair for Nancy Astor. I have to go and ask the whip if I am paired."

Clark was one of the best informed men on little things and antiques that I have ever met. I went with him on one occasion into a junk yard down in Southwark, where he actually discovered a piece of chain mail in almost perfect condition. The man weighed it and sold it to him at scrap prices, for a few shillings. He sold it to a museum for a very good sum. John was a very canny Scot.

One day we were walking up Charing Cross Road, when he noticed an old steel engraving of the members of the first Reform Parliament, 1832. He gave the bookseller, in whose window the picture was shown exactly one shilling. I carried it down to Westminster. At the big gate I handed it to him and made my way home.

"That picture we bought in Charing Cross Road," he said to me the next time I met him. "You'd have laughed. I sold it for five quid. I could have got more for it, but the chappie was too insistent. One of our boys, too."

I got exactly nothing out of the transaction. John was, indeed, a most canny Scot.

John was also a great lover of animals. Lions were his speciality. He traded in live snakes. I was there when he produced one of the reptiles in a small smoking room for members, and cleared the place in less than twenty seconds. Jack Lees, a Novocastrian, as they love to designate themselves even if they live in Newburn, was then the member for Belper. I thought he was going to collapse when Clark started kissing the dreadful creature.

"Hee op!" Lees roared. "Let me out!"

Clark put the thing away. "The Sergeant at Arms wouldn't be pleased if he knew," he said.

The last I heard of John S. was on a much publicised fire in Glasgow when a lion was trapped. He went into the beast's cage and soothed it until the firemen helped him to get it out to safety. It made a big story in the press. The last time I saw him was during the crisis which destroyed the Labour
Party in 1931. He knocked on my door and came in. I saw that he was considerably distressed.

"Mac's going to sell us down the river," he almost moaned. "I never thought he would. How we have been deceived!"

I waited until he grew coherent. Over a cup of tea he told me how MacDonald and Snowden intended to head a Conservative government. He was more bitter than truculent. Later, as he left me, he stood at the door looking up at the sky. "And to think I let him have a copy of my poems," he breathed.

Phyllis' sister had gone to live in Paris almost as soon as we were married. As her mother was staying with her, we went over to spend Christmas with her. We found her flat near the Buttes Chaumont. It was a lovely Paris, that christmastide. The sun flooded the beautiful city with radiance. I was interested to go there for I had learned that the flat was quite near the little park, which had been a point of deep military importance during the Commune.

When Phyllis and I went for a walk in that charming park she was somewhat surprised to find me in a most reticent mood. She thought the park a most delicious oasis in the built-up city about it. I had to accept all her joy at her discovery. But she knew nothing of Lissagaray, and she could not hear him whispering the tale of horror that turned that little sanctuary into a frightful shambles.

"At the Buttes Chaumont the corpses, piled up in enormous heaps, inundated with petroleum, were burnt in the open air. The wholesale massacres lasted up to the first days in June...."

The ignorance of the Parisians of the actual facts of the Commune of 1871 has always puzzled me. Maybe it stems from the absence of a history of the event rather than the deliberate playing down of its happening by the governments. I doubt if there is any memory of the intense proletarian struggle in the deep consciousness of the French people. Lissagaray wrote his history in his own language, but it died the death of all books that do not touch the
souls of men and women. Today, no Frenchman is interested in Lissagaray, mainly because most of them are unaware of what happened. The only ghosts that walked out of the Commune into the present were those of the petroleuses.

Fortunately, Marx got hold of a copy. Being in poor health, he asked his daughter Eleanor to translate it into English. She was competent enough to do his bidding, and the book was good enough to find a publisher, Reeves and Turner, in London. In her preface to the book she admitted that much of the original work had had to be repressed because "it had become out of date". She might have been more truthful and stated that her father had edited the young Frenchman's script. "It had been entirely revised and corrected by my father," she also stated. To the reader of that book who knows his Marx, and who can recognise the hand of the Marx propelling the pencil, the hand of Lissagaray is somewhat absent. Actually the finished translation is more the work and the words of Marx than it is of the author. Lissagaray was too pedestrian a writer to have produced the lines that can be found on page two hundred and seven:

"The glorious flame of Paris still had its failings. One must have been enkindled by it to describe it. Beside it the Communard journals, in spite of their romanticism, show pale and dull. It is true that the mise en scene was unpretending. In the streets, on the silent boulevards, a battalion of a hundred men setting out for the battle or returning from it, a woman, who follows, a passer-by who applauds - that is all. But it is the drama of the Revolution, simple and gigantic as a drama of Aeschylus."

If the French ever want the Marxian history of their own Commune they will have to translate Marx's translation of Lissagaray back into the French language.

We got back home from Paris and settled down to our lives in our home in Kennington. Life was a cheerless affair. I made my usual journey's to Bob's office and helped to put The Worker to bed. It was interesting working on the stone, shaping the pages and presenting the paper to its rapidly diminishing readership. It was becoming obvious that the trade union movement was slipping beyond the aid of the Minority Movement. Energy went out of its bones when the electorate almost denuded the Labour Party of its membership in the House of Commons. In my own county only Jack Lawson and Joe
Batey were returned in the mining strongholds. Ben Spoor managed to keep his seat. Even Will Lawther was cast out of the Barnard Castle seat, and for the only time in his life found himself actually unemployed. Not that unemployment was unknown to him. He never did much work at all!

There was nothing for us to do but sit and wait for the end.

It was a sad experience for any person to undergo. There was that occasion when I revisited Hunwick. The contrast with the village I had always known was unbelievably striking. It was shattering. The chapel at which my forebears had worshipped during those long decades when coal was king, was now a rejected, unkempt, unminded thing. Many of the men I had known still survived. The once invincible members of the army of Christ were now desolate and threadbare specimens of mankind, condemned to live out their lives as human scarecrows in a rootless misery. Rough Lea colliery had been closed for years. All the joys of their religious endeavours had been pared away and consumed at their fire-sides which lacked fuel. It was deeply pitiful to meet them and listen to the sad stories that accompanied their disillusionments. These men had excavated coal from its most pitifully circumscribed fastnesses in order to sustain them in order to experience all the pleasures of rendering their thanks to God for the privilege of being able to work.

It is excruciating for me to remember them in their power-drained flesh.
There were two reasons why I was able to join the staff of Arcos Ltd. In the first place I was invited to do so by a member of the Russian Trade Delegation, and in the second, because I had gone to Seaham Harbour to assist Harry Pollitt in his hopeless contest with Ramsay MacDonald in the 1931 general election. He it was who overrode all the objections to my being employed by the "bunch in King Street" when they came, as was their right, to vet those who were to be employed in the Russian organisations.

When the election, which decimated the parliamentary Labour Party, took place I was unemployed. The telegram from Pollitt came out of the blue, and I went North. I wanted to see the old county again. I deeply resented the betrayal of the party, and I was most anxious to find out how antagonised the mining proletariat could be. I soon found out. At the first meeting I addressed on some square in Seaham, I very soon realised that the name of MacDonald was still held in reverence.

As we plunged into the constituency to Dawdon, Horden and the sites of the deep mines, it soon became clear that our quest was hopeless. Despite all the help which Tom Mann and the luminaries of Covent Garden lavished on the candidate, all the votes which Pollitt collected were not worth the counting. The political frailty of the Labour Party was fully exposed in that pre-Nazi period. It remains exposed.

In Arcos I worked with a couple of delightful Russians in the statistical department. All the figures of the trade between the United Kingdom and the U.S.S.R. were there reduced to percentages and made into pretty little graphs.
for the edification of the heads of departments. There were many departments from timber and matches to shipping and oil. It was interesting work, the salary was good, and I was quite happy. The amenities of the offices were quite good. The canteen and the co-operative in the basement of the East Wing of Bush House were at the disposal of all the staff. The hours, too, were reasonable. Overtime payment was a thing unknown.

About a year later I was called into some office in the Trade Delegation, and there I was introduced to a young Russian who had been transferred from Intourist, New York to the office of the firm in Bush House. His name was Gortchakoff. During our conversation he asked me if I had ever had any experience in advertising. I did my best to assure him that I had not had any such experience. For some reason Gortchakoff required an affirmative answer to his question, which was: would I undertake the duties of advertisement manager for the London office? Under pressure, I acceded to his request, and in a couple of days I was installed in a small office in Intourist.

Luckily for me all the advertising done under auspices of the Trade Delegation had to pass through an advertising agency that was controlled by an Anglo-Russian, Dr. Louis Segal. The ostensible purpose of the agency was to cream off the then percent agency fees. The chief executant realised that I was quite raw in the business and was kind enough to instruct me in all the mechanics of advertising and shield me from the snares of the space-sellers. I still feel thankful to her shade, for without her guidance I would not have got into the run of things so easily. Within a short time I was able to deal with the bland representatives who crowded upon me as soon as it became known that I had money to buy space.

Gortchakoff was by no means a helpful man. He was withdrawn and unhappy. His marriage was not wrecked; it was abandoned. His glances were always cast over his shoulder. Suspicious, temperamental and sulkly, he travelled his own way to the execution shed, poor fellow.

A decision had been made in Moscow to create a popular tour of the European part of Soviet Russia, starting and finishing at Hays Wharf, London Bridge. It was my business to 'put over' the project.
Up to the time of my arrival overland tours were arranged in conjunction with Thomas Cook and Sons Ltd, who had a branch office a few doors down the Aldwych. Six motor vessels had been put into service on the direct London/Leningrad run, with a fortnightly diversion to Hamburg. All the ships were of the same burthen and looked as if they had come out of the same mould. Three classes of travel were offered. A full load of passengers was a hundred and thirty, about eighty of which were tourist. Prior to this the business done by the office was confined to the passing of American technicians through London, and the arranging of comprehensive tours for the very important members of the Labour parliamentary party.

The plan was to offer cheap tours to the travelling public: a thirteen day trip to Leningrad and back with five days sight seeing in the city at £1.75 inclusive, a more popular tour of twenty-one days which extended the sightseeing to Moscow, at £24., and a longer trip of three weeks in Russia which included a trip down the Volga and a rail itinerary through the Don country to Kiev, and back to Leningrad at £32.

Once I had organised a comprehensive advertisement scheme scattered over most of the English press which would accept my advertisement - there were many who would not - the popularity of these tours became manifest, and we began to do a large business with the travelling public. Every Saturday one or other of the six vessels left Hays Wharf with a full load of enthusiastic passengers. In addition, our overland business was increased when it became possible for tours to pass through Belo-Ostrov and over the Polish border. We did not worry about the financing of these extraordinarily cheap tours. All we had to worry about was to meet the insatiable demand of the Moscow office for valuts. We left it to the toiling Russians to share their food with the crowds which went holiday-making among the cement and derricks of socialist construction.

It interested me to come into such close contact with those ordinary people who could afford to pay so much for a holiday, young, eager people mostly, products of the inter-war years, who had not come into contact with the ravages made by economic depression, school teachers, men and women with
excellently remunerative jobs, girls from desks which leaned the affluence, and folk with money to spend. All the while I kept in touch with Joe Mackey and Bill Blyton, who were hewing coal in Harton colliery, and glad to carry home something near to two pounds a week wages. I wondered often how and why it had all happened while it was my business to excite people about making holiday in Soviet Russia.

The costs of advertisement grew and my budget mounted. There came a time when I was loathe to walk along Fleet Street for fear of being way-laid and carried off to some exquisite snug or some dining room by some importunate space seller. Of that crowd of eager men only one earned my respect and my affection, Tom O'Connor, who sold space for the Manchester Guardian group of newspapers. He has long been laid to rest in his native Ulster. He was the most gentle and the most thoughtful man I encountered in that savage world. He spoke many languages, Russian being his greatest accomplishment. He helped me more than I ever told him. We often ate at the expense of his employers, quite often in Simpsons. He possessed a delightful brogue, had a wit to match it at all times, and he kept a charming attitude to his life. I ate with him a few days before he set out on his return to Belfast. He wrote me once, and, thereafter, there was silence. They told me in the Fleet Street office that he was dead. The man who told me brushed his eye with his hand. Great Tom.

I do confess that I did enjoy many of the meetings with some of the men at the festive board, or at the bar. They were the men of the newspaper world, the men beneath the pages of print. He who is unaware of the grim features of the advertising manager knows very little about the act of journalism. I have it on my own soul that I played straight with my employers and with the space-men. I did drink their offerings of lovely wines. I expect that it is still the same today, and that the peddlers of space still haunt the offices and places of industry. One has but to study the modern newspaper today to get some inkling of the hectic life of this day and generation.

In the beginning of 1933 Cortchakov was recalled to Moscow. Before he went away the man who was to superseded him took over his office. Poor Cortchakov! He was a man who was always hedged about by enormous fears. He suspected all men while he cowered before all bureaucrats. I realised that some-
thing had gone wrong for him some weeks before he took me into his confidence and told me that he was returning to Moscow, and that a Mr. Scheimmann was taking over. He warned me to be careful with the new man. He succeeded in making me somewhat apprehensive. I had reason to be anxious, for Phyllis had become pregnant.

It was obvious why Corthakoff had lost his job. He had been unable to make contact with the big people in Westminster. He had shown himself to be a minnow in a big pool wherein swam many large fishes. He failed miserably with one of the leaders of the Labour Party, who had come to grief in the great election fiasco. That gentleman had been given a long, free trip to the Soviet Union. Corthakoff made the mistake of informing the good socialist that the trip was for so many days, travel-free, at five pounds ten shillings per day. What happened in Russia we did not learn, but the great politician arrived back in London with five days of unexpired holiday-making. To add to his misdeeds, Corthakoff was a little more than emphatic when stating his refusal to make a refund of twenty-seven pounds to the political gentleman. He might have been more diplomatic when he refused an application which ought not to have been made.

With the deepening of the depression, and especially after the Joynton Hick Hicks episode in high politics succeeded in damaging Anglo-Soviet trade, the tourist business began to fall off. Scheimmann, who had been inveigled into the organisation, took charge of the advertising fund. Very soon he was the office.

We were all interested in Aaron Scheimmann. He was a man about whom his compatriots whispered. When he did arrive he proved to be a very big man in all ways. He was tall and broad, a well-fed man, slow of movement and ponderous of decision. He was well-dressed after a German-Dutch style. His shoulders were broad and his belly copious. His head was massive. Every Monday morning he paid a visit to his barber and had his head completely shaved. Every hair of his head was removed. His excessive balding was uncompromisingly completed by the razor. His beard, eyebrows and all protruding hair were cut as close as the razor could take them. When he left the barber's shop he was always in
danger of catching his death of cold. We got over the first shock, and every subsequent Monday morning was accepted with equanimity by all the members of the staff. What the barber really did was to sharpen the glitter of his eyes as well as to discover the track made by a bullet across the great dome of his head.

Aaron Scheimmann was one of the most remarkable men I have known. As a linguist he was superb. He seemed to be able to converse in most of the European languages. There was one occasion when I stood near him as he discussed a tour with a small group of Chinamen in their own language. He was informed on most topics of the day. He possessed a sense of humour that is rarely granted to ordinary Russians. He was always courteous, and almost generally happy. Whenever he was annoyed the staff knew how to leave him alone.

He was of the time and the order of the world of Lenin. He fought in Helsinki on the side of the Bolsheviki, and when that country dragged itself out of the orbit of the Soviets he crossed into Leningrad. He it was who took over the catastrophic rouble and shaped it into the chervonetz. The notes which he issued all bore for many years his own characteristic signature, which began with three or four legible Russian letters and ended with a finely drawn scribble. He piloted the finances of his country through the scissors crisis, leaving all the argument to the politicians. He often went abroad to do business with foreign governments. While he was in London his eldest son died. And there came the time when he did not return to Russia.

The Soviet authorities were at all times anxious to secure the services of Scheimmann. Years after his defection they discovered him carrying on his own business in Holland. As a first step in cajoling him back to Russia, they offered him the job in Intourist. This has always puzzled me. Why did he accept so menial a job? He knew, for he told me, that they were anxious that he should return to Moscow. He smiled when I once asked him if it was his intention to go back. "No," he said. "I will let Prince Minsky go and find out."

In a less Stalinised Soviet Russia he might have gone back, and had he done so he most certainly would have contrived to bring some kind of political sanity into that deprived world. He never hid his cynicism when he discussed
his country. He was a strange man. The first thing he asked me to do was to find the grave of the boy they buried in Kensal Green cemetery. When it was located he took his wife and son to stand by the pitiful little mound, and to weep. Aaron Scheimmann was possessed of a deeply dug soul.

I was at the counter dealing with Dmitri Shostakovich's brother, an engineer who was returning to his native land from Detroit, when Scheimmann came into the office. On seeing him, the young man said to me: "Is that Scheimmann?" When I told him that it was he pondered for quite a while. Then he said to me: "Now I have seen him."

Coincident with the shooting of Zinoviev and Kamenev there was a grave casting out of the unsecuried personnel in the Russian offices. The OGPU moved relentlessly. All without clearance were sacked. Scheimmann was one of them. I lost sight of the great man. In all probability he and his family were snatched up by the Nazis and found their ways into Belsen. I know that after leaving intourist he went back to the Low Countries.

Scheimmann did a splendid job for his erstwhile employers. He was able to meet all the great people of London and converse with them after their own fashion. In the capitalist world he could not have prevented himself becoming a millionaire. I have a feeling that Malcolm Muggeridge will forgive me when I say that Aaron Scheimmann held him in high esteem.

When Muggeridge first came into the office to discuss a trip to Moscow he was by no means the man who struts across the television screen. I recall him as a tall, well-groomed, good looking and eager young man. I interviewed him. He told me that he was making the trip on his own and that when he got there he hoped to become the correspondent for the Manchester Guardian. In other words he was going to walk out on a limb. He waited while I went to see Scheimmann.

"Do you suggest that I should see him?" he asked me.
"Yes," I replied. "I think you should."
"I'll go and see him myself," he said.

Scheimmann laid his great body across the counter and gave the young man a solid stare. Then he raised himself up and opened the counter door. "I
think you had better come into my office," he said.

When the young man came out of the office he nodded his thanks to me.
"Who is he?" he asked. I told him and he went away.

That was the first of the many visits he paid to Intourist.

Scheinmann received him with all his graciousness whenever the young man came in. He arranged the visit to Moscow and sent him on his way. From that moment he kept his eye on Malcolm Muggeridge. He made a point of buying all the books the young man published at that time, and, what is more, he thought highly of them. When he returned from Moscow he called upon the old man. Their joint happiness was obvious to us all.

Mr. Muggeridge, the father of Malcolm, came into the office. I interviewed him. I forget the details of his visit. He was no longer a member of parliament. We talked about his son. I asked him if he thought that Malcolm would follow him into the Labour Party.

"Malcolm!" he said, smiling. "How should I know what he will do? He will go his own way despite all the advice I might give him."

So the days passed by.

The Joynson Hicks hubbub died away and we picked up business. We also overrode the trouble caused by the Metro-Vickers trial in Moscow. Under Scheinmann the office ran smoothly. For a Russian businessman he was unique. He was the most apt diplomat I ever met. During his early months in the office the Soviet government offered to provide passports to their nationals if they could persuade their relations abroad to meet the cost in foreign currency. The scheme was advertised and some business was transacted. A deposit of £200 had first to be made and the matter was then referred to Moscow. If the passport was granted the rest of the money had to be paid before it could be issued. For a person who wished to leave the USSR permanently the cost of the passport was £500. The lesser figure of £250 had to be paid for the passport of any Soviet citizen who wished to leave the country for a period of time up to six months. Should the passport be refused, the deposited sum was returned less ten percent.

Scheinmann dealt with all this business himself. The applications came in the main from Jewish persons. There was an old rabbi who paid his deposit
on three occasions for his son who was living in Odessa. He gave up his quest in the end. I pitied the poor old man and I admired the manner in which Scheinmann dealt with him. When the poor old man took his leave on the last occasion, he and Scheinmann embraced each other as friends.

He left all the business of the office to his staff. He removed any member peremptorily when the occasion arose. He demanded fulfilment of all tasks. Within the terms of Aroos employment codes he was generous. He had more smiles than frowns in his general make-up. I still regard him as a man it was my privilege to know.
When Montagu Slater breezed in upon the Left he was met with open arms, for it was rare for a man to come down from Oxbridge and attach himself so courageously to what was then known as 'the Movement'. King Street was most anxious to tack on to the upsurging of popular revulsion which manifested itself when the danger of fascism was seen and recognised. Slater was encouraged to the extent of his being helped to put on a play one Sunday afternoon in a Westminster theatre.

I bought a ticket and found myself sitting next to Ernest Toller. I recall very little of Slater's play. It had a Welsh mining locale for its action, but it was a formless affair in all proletarian conscience. It did not herald the arrival of a librettist for Benjamin Britten. Toller was not impressed, and said so when he shook hands with me at the end of the show. The next time I met Toller was when he came into the Intourist office. He had been invited to Moscow, and he came in to buy a ticket to Leningrad. The fare as I remember it was just over six pounds. He did not recognise me as his companion at the play.

I asked him if he was serious in his intention to go by ship, and when I pointed out to him that he would put his personal safety at hazard by boarding a ship which had to make the passage through the Kiel Canal. He could buy a ticket, but we could not guarantee a safe journey. He saw the force of my argument and decided to circumvent the Fatherland.

I did not see him again for some weeks, when he called at the office to inform us that he had left a satchel containing his most valuable papers on a train somewhere between Baku and Samarkand. He said that he did not notice
his loss until he was going through the customs.

Scheinmann immediately instituted an enquiry and some two or three weeks later we received word that Toller would be able to recover his satchel from the captain of the m/v Smolny when it arrived at Maya Wharf two or three days later. I got into touch with the German author and arranged for him to meet me at Bush House when we could go to the ship and retrieve his property. He was in a happy mood when he came to the office. After he had had a chat with Scheinmann we set out by bus for London Bridge. It was a lovely, warm night, one of those gentle experiences which Gissing must not have noticed, for, had he done so, his pen would have been stirred to a new height in encomium. It was, indeed, an evening to accompany the joy of Ernst Toller, for not only was he going to recover his satchel, but H.C. Wells had actually written to the New Statesman and felicitated Toller on the observations he had offered to the paper a week before. As we sat on the crowded bus he insisted upon reading to me passages from Wells' letter, and offering me his opinion on the points which the great man had made. He was as happy as a child. He wanted to know if I had ever met the great man, and when I said that I had not he expressed his sorrow.

"But you know his writings, and appreciate his genius?" he cried out.
"You read him deeply, conclusively?" And then he sat a while. "And to think that he could spare his time to reply to my observations in a paper like this!" he said. "Oh! How happy I am!"

We got off the bus and went down under the bridge to Maya Wharf. The ship was tied up out of the way of a Baltic butter boat. Soviet vessels habitually sniffed when in the presence of those from Poland. Kapitän Suzenko, newly shaven as close as Scheimann, came to the door of his cabin to receive us. The peasant visage of the man, dark, frowning, near pugnacious, made the German pause before taking the proffered hand. The door closed upon us. The valise lay upon a map spread over a table.

"Ah! It has come. Do let me thank you, captain, please," said Toller.
"You recognise it as your property?" Suzenko asked in English.
"Yes, indeed," said Toller.
"Then I will hand it to you after you sign this paper," said the Captain. Both men signed the paper, but not until the First Mate had been called.
He and I witnessed the document. "And now," said Susenko, "we drink."

I knew the captain and his drinks quite well. He compounded them himself during the night watch. He kept his current supply of the vile stuff in long bottles, from which he poured liberally. I always did suspect that the basis of the concoction was vodka and tar. One was requested to swallow it by the half pint. When we had torn ourselves free from the convivial company on the Smolny we passed on to the wharf. On the way, Tollner remarked that he had not liked the drink very much, and asked me why I had not drunk. Was I one of those teetotallers?

I merely smiled, and I assured him that I had a warm respect for my own stomach.

Schlemann had gone when we got back to the office. As the office had closed, I walked with him to the Strand, where we shook hands and said our good-byes. He was, he said, going to America.

He went to America and to his suicide. Life was not gracious to the author of Masses and Men. I often ponder on his fate. There was much that was likeable about him. He was courteous in all his ways. And yet he was not a man to stir deep friendship at the first point of contact. He was lonely. He was outside his own world and embroiled in one which bewildered him and left him to grieve sacrificially for all his fellows. I can imagine the dejection which Hollywood laid upon him. Peace lie upon his ashes.

Schlemann had more interests in his life than worrying about the lost property of a German author. I do not think that he ever had even the remotest sympathy for any work by Marx. His life held two compartments. In the one he secreted his wife and his little son, and in the other he lived out the tasks of business with an assurance and an aplomb that were startling.

In London he had to build up Intourist and prove to his distant employers that he was still the same intrepid entrepreneur, had always been. He laid his finger unerringly upon every point and aspect of the business. He cracked immense jokes. He never grew angry, but one knew instinctively if anything displeased him. It was astounding that he should be managing an unadventurous travel agency when he had once been the leading banker during the founding and funding of a new civilisation. Why did he accept the post? I knew
that he possessed as much sympathy for communism as he had for a dead cat
lying in the roadway. Like all Jews he possessed an abundance of irony. At
times he was humourously cynical. He rarely mentioned the Soviet government,
and yet one could sense his objections to it when in conversation with him.
But he would allow no one to speak disparagingly of that government. Once he
loudly reproved an irate tourist who spoke offensively to him.

"I do not offer you congratulations, sir, when you praise my government,"
he said sternly, "and so I reprove you when you force me to speak in its de-
fence....unnecessarily. I ask you not to abuse it any longer. Please have a
care of my words, for I do not wish to grow angry with you. I request you to
leave this office."

What had the Soviets done to lose such a man? What did they lose when he
defected? And why were they tempting him back? Throughout his employment
in the office he played "pussycat" with Moscow. Reasons for this came when he
spoke to me about Prince Mirsky going back. I recall his smile, that special
one which appeared to make his eyes loiter above his naked eyebrows.

"I think that he has made a bold mistake," he said to me. "Yes, a mistake
from which he will not escape."

Had he cared to do so he could have persuaded Mirsky to stay in England,
but he chose to let the tall, proud man have his head.

It was different with Peter Kapitza. He just let that man go.

The office staff had no admiration for Kapitza. As far as we were concerned
he was a scientist who worked with a man called Rutherford at the Cavendish,
and who was a Soviet citizen, and who lived with his wife in Cambridge.

It was his wife whom we heartily disliked. I will not say that we detested
her. Whenever she was making her way to Russia the office staff had almost to
stand to attention. She filled the place with orders and poisoned the atmos-
phere with complaints. We all dreaded to see her enter the office. None of us
bowed when she took her leave. She was the epitome of the Soviet bourgeoisie,
a creature high in the ranks, who trod the creatures of the lesser world under
her feet. As for her husband, he was an aloof creature, who trod his own world
with a crushing weight of superiority. Undoubtedly he was young; undoubtedly
he was brilliant; undoubtedly he could peer down at all his lower contempory-
aries. He strode his own world like a colossus.

Both were going for a holiday to Russia, an important holiday. Their house in Cambridge had been hermetically sealed. All their immediate goods and chattels had been confined to the care of Anglo-Soviet Shipping, who ran the motor vessels. We all survived the visit of Madame Kapitza, and then we prepared for the advent of Peter.

He came. He admitted himself to the back of the counter and walked majestically to Scheinmann's office. There was no humility about Peter Kapitza. He stayed with Scheinmann, and then the old man accompanied him to the street door. As he came back into the office he bent over me and asked me to accompany him to his office. "Shut the door," he said when I had entered. Then he indicated a seat, which I took.

"What I want you to do," he began, "is to act implicitly with these instructions. You must stay with the boat until she sails. All the time you must stay near the professor, but without making a nuisance of yourself." He smiled. When the boat has sailed you will ring me at my home and tell me. Is that all clear?" He waited until I had nodded. Then he went on. "Mister Kapitza is a most important man, and Mrs Kapitza thinks she is a most important wife." He paused. "You have never met Molotov?" he asked me. When I had got over my surprise he said: "He, too, has a wife. Such a wife!"

He lit a cigarette. He smoked them by the score.

"I want you to see that they both get all they want," he went on to say. "You had better consult the chief steward and explain to him that both must be kept happy all the time they are on the boat. After they get off they will not be so happy. The chief steward has his instructions, of course," he went on, "but it is better to...to emphasise this importance." Again he smiled, but this time he leaned towards me. "You see," he said to me in a low voice, "they are not coming back."

I sat, almost mesmerised. I picked up his voice later, which said: "There is now much important work to do in Russia. When their holiday is over and they begin to make preparations to return to this country they will be told." He talked softly. His face was lit with a grin. "Then will come their surprise. They will become happy in time, when they discover that the home
which has been prepared for them is an exact replica of the one they lived in in Cambridge... down to the last detail..."

We talked a little while longer, and then I went back to my desk. Later I made the short journey to the wharf and there I carried out my imposition. On the ship I did find myself somewhat compromised. It was publicly known at the time that Rutherford was doing something with the atom. In the interests of the Cavendish adventure, and the exploitation of the research I could have warned the man of his impending severance of his association with Professor Rutherford. But there were difficulties. Apart from the fact that it would have meant the loss of my job, there was the insuperable aloofness of the man as well as his vast assumption which could scarcely bend to acknowledge even a hard won doctorate had I possessed one! And there was his wife. So I held to my duty and stayed until the boat was taken into the stream by the tug.

I went to the telephone and rang Scheinman. I told him that they had gone. He muttered his thanks and put the phone down.

I have often thought about that episode. If I had warned Kapitza I wonder if he would have left the boat. I am sure that if his wife had been told she would have taken the initiative, and would not have found the act of defection difficult to carry out. Kapitza was too important a figure in the world of emerging physics for anything to happen other than that which did happen. It was his misfortune when he was compelled to remain in his native land, and it was his misfortune when he went back to Russia. I doubt if he ever saw Lord Rutherford again.

It is now known that Rutherford insisted upon the Soviet Government being allowed to purchase all the equipment which Kapitza had designed and worked on in the Cavendish Laboratory, and that when the deal was made he insisted that Professor Cockcroft should supervise the packing of everything and the despatch to Russia. Had it been the fate of Peter Kapitza to remain in England he would have been enrolled in the team which left our shores when all the work at Cavendish was taken to America. Once there, he might have achieved the fame and distinction which was showered upon other scientists. But there is no reason to speculate. 1934 is quite a long way away from 1971.
Looking back on that episode I am fully aware of the fact that the part I played in it was small and circumstantial. The life history of the important Russian scientist was, perhaps, purified by what happened in London. It would make an absorbing story. He had to pass through the Lysenko period, which was almost as catastrophic as that of the Stalin madness. He could have perished in either episode. Kapitza is merely a figure of those awful years, years when my own generation was compelled to wait upon the most appalling events and confrontations conjured by men who were ignorant of the fact that they were creating a world-wide eruption within a political condition that was engineered by men who were hopelessly wrong and dreadfully misguided.

As I look back and try to recall those years I find myself trying to relive a social disaster that held all the similarities as any of those movements which we had to apprehend as the induced cataclysm came to term within the disrupted strata above the floor of the mine. There was the same ebbing and flowing of the ultimate purpose that led to the culmination, the long roar of the decisive fracturing, the groanings of immense pains and the final devastation of terror which sinks into the deepest awareness of the watcher who is held in thrall until the crescendo has passed into implausible whimperings and dying away in the softly gulping sobs like those of a thrashed child.

I did at times wonder if I would be alive when the silence descended upon the nations, just as it always came upon the mine, and I would be able to watch the dust laying its thick carpet over the mangled earth as it covered up the shame of those who had, unknowingly, encouraged such horrors and intrepid hatreds out of the fastnesses of time beyond barbarity, leaving it all to go by unremembered.
For some time the staff in the office had dealt with Lord Passfield on the question of a deep incursion he and his wife wished to make into the Soviet Union. They told us that they were at work on a book, so we understood that some importance was attached to their proposal by the gentlemen in the Trade Delegation. The rotund little man of the gleaming spectacles and sharp-pointed beard became one of our constant callers. Scheinmann always received him and always ushered him out of the office when the interview was ended. There was no question of a subvention from the Soviet authorities, for they had no money to spare. Piatiletki saw to that. There are still many who criticise Soviet Communism, A New Civilisation, and even those who do must understand that their visits to the Soviet Union were conditioned by the amounts of money the two could afford. It must not be forgotten that Joseph Stalin looked every one of his gift horses in the mouth, and rejected most of them.

I had known Sidney Webb from the day when he took over the representation of Seaham. He often came to South Shields to speak at our meetings at election times. Indeed, we never knew when he might pop in of a winter's night at the Marsden Miners' Hall, clad in his dark ulster. A splendid man to know among the great figures of his generation of politicians.

The old couple travelled on their last journey to the Soviet Union in one of the boats, probably for the pleasure of the trip, but more probably because it cut their expenses down.

It surprised us in the office when we found a postcard from Mr. George
Bernard Shaw among the morning mail, requesting a permit which would admit Mrs Shaw and himself to the boat so that they could see their friends, Lord Passfield and Mrs Sidney Webb off on their journey. I posted the permit, which I concocted, to the old gentleman. I gave that post card to a private first class in the American army just before he left Taunton for Normandy.

It happened that there were few tourists sailing on the boat that Saturday afternoon. It was a lovely day when the Shaws arrived on the wharf. The Webbs came down to the gangway to welcome their friends and took them up to their cabin. There was no one to welcome them. The captain remained in his own quarters. None of the Russian captains dined with the passengers as captains do on the great trans-oceanic liners. The Shaws passed through London and on to the Soviet ship without being noticed by one single journalist. I had informed Vladimir Krivopolov that Shaw was going to the wharf and he made it his business to be there with his camera. He found the quartet on the top deck and asked permission to photograph them. Shaw posed the group himself like the expert he was. I have looked everywhere for my copy which Volodya gave me, but without success.

The old people basked in the warm sunshine. There was only a handful of American engineers travelling, none of whom was aware of the great man's identity. Beatrice was her own frail self, overshadowed by Mrs Shaw, a magnificent dressed lady. They sat together talking, woman wise, neither of them leaving their seats. The two men strolled the deck, talking, pointing at the buildings and vessels they saw. At times they laughed, at least Shaw did most of the laughing. Sidney Webb had grins to spare and nods in plenty. The chief steward brought them light refreshment and they sat at a table like ordinary people.

To my surprise, the captain came and paid them his respects, and left them to talk. It was the same captain who had brought every Russian soul aboard his vessel to rigid attention when Litvinoff and his wife came aboard one Saturday afternoon to join the vessel on its trip to Leningrad. What is more that captain kept them standing at attention until Litvinoff and Maisky, and their wives, had disappeared into the ship. Different men; different degree degrees. The famous four were left to do their own talking. At times, Shaw accepted his wife's reproof or expostulation when he was really witty and had
made himself laugh uproariously. Once or twice she shoved his arm away rather petulantly playful as women do who are in love, and once or twice he bent over the table and touched her on her cheek, and once he did the same to Mrs. Webb.

The pilot came aboard and the ship slipped away from her moorings. The Webbs saw their friends on to the quay and stood on the deck. Both men were bare headed. They waved farewell. Then Shaw took his wife by the arm and led her across the lines to the car.

Vladimir and I walked away together.

The episode was over.

Some time later I received from Moscow a package of photographs of a stage setting which showed the figure of G.B.S. standing in a minatory posture in the centre of a theatre stage. Behind him, in a semi-circle, were eight figures of Shaw in the same pose standing in curtained niches. Scheinmann suggested that I should send Shaw a copy.

I have the letter before me as I write. It is dated the 23rd of October, 1934. I addressed it to St. Ayots, Herts. It reads:

"Dear Sir,

We have pleasure in sending you the enclosed photograph, which we have just received from Moscow, in the hope that it will prove of interest to you.

The photograph is of a scene in your play, The Devil's Disciple, which is at present playing in Moscow.

Yours faithfully,

That letter was returned to me dated 24th October, 1934. The address is crossed out and "4 Whitehall Court" is written in black ink. Beneath my signature is Shaw's reply in red ink. It reads:

"Many thanks.

But surely it is a poster, not a scene from the play.

G. Bernard Shaw."

Sidney Webb was a constant visitor to the office. He and Scheinmann became firm friends. Beatrice never came at all. Scheinman did all it was possible to do for the old couple, even though he sometimes waxed cynically about the book they were writing. He told me that he just could not understand how two such researchers could reform their established opinions by studying the Russian
system without knowing the Russian language. He agreed that Webb spoke excellent German, and that he and Scheinman achieved a sounder rapport when they spoke in that language. I believe that his attitude rested upon his conviction that over in Russia "they" would not play straight with the old couple.

Soviet Communism has been unfavourably criticised and has sunk into a neglect that has not been reserved for the majority of their works. I treasure my own copy because I have enjoyed my studies of other of their works over the years. Today, their History of Trade Unionism and Industrial Democracy mould away on many library shelves. They will be rediscovered eventually. I remain stubbornly convinced that those modern critics and sociologists who have neglected the study of the Webbs and the Shaw of the Fabian period will not come to terms with the proletarian endeavour until they do so. Not that it matters much in this period of roccoco Marxism.

How many important people passed through our office during those years. Under Scheinmann the staff had been recruited from the redundant fall-out of the big tourist businesses. They were good men at their jobs, but they were as far removed from a knowledge of the 'socialist world' as any who could be imagined. Their politics in each case was grimly suspect. All they were interested in were the mechanics of tourism, a world apart.

I still possess Ilya Ehrenburg's letter written in Russian to Scheinmann asking for a couple of first class to Leningrad. I was interested to meet the writer from Paris. He came on the ship with Andre Malraux. The photograph I have of them is one taken on the same ship and in the same place on the top deck which was occupied by Shaw and Webb. They came and they went. No one in London noticed them.

The man I remember most distinctly was Henri Barbusse.

It was duskling when the ship disembarked its passengers at Hay's Wharf. As the immigration officials were leaving the chief called me aside and told me he would be glad if I would give an eye to a French couple in the first class...chap called Barbusse. I told him I would be pleased to do so and he hurried away.

The chief steward showed me the cabin. The door was open. Inside an exceedingly tall man was standing watching a weary little woman trying to pack
their bags which, apparently, had been searched most thoroughly. Barbusse was almost distraught. They were transit passengers, and for some reason which I did not understand, they had received instructions to leave the country as soon as possible.

The lady travelling with the great author was not Russian. She spoke the language much better than I did, which was not saying very much. We made some kind of contact. I did all I could to help them to repack and finally I saw them off the ship and away from the wharf. I saw them on to a bus which would get them to Westminster. I believe that they were without English or French money, a fault that was guaranteed to stir the ireful suspicions partaking in a disembarkation.

What astounded me was the height of the French author. He was thin and woefully haggard. He looked a man upon whom death was gazing closely. Each time he drew himself to his full height he seemed to reduce the dimensions of the small cabin. He was formidably bent at the shoulders. All the time I was in his presence he did not speak. He left everything to the harassed little woman who was his companion. Despite all the confusion, anger and anxiety, I felt that I was in the presence of a great personage. He seemed immense in some indefinable way. That he could be kind and generous was obvious. That he had suffered some unreasonable exercise of authority was plain for any stranger to see.

I felt privileged to be in the man's presence, for I knew Under Fire backwards. That glorious moment in the trenches when his comrade-in-arms had called out the name, "Liebknecht!", and that lugubrious scene about the egg that so emblazoned the novel with the man's huge pity seemed to come starkly into my memory. Barbusse did not know it, but his immense novel of the war did rest somewhere between us, close enough to cause me to catch my breath. This was the Henri Barbusse that Louis Aragon had almost denounced, almost apostatised. I was infuriated as I stood in that small cabin looking at him in his condition of frustration. How could they have known that they had dealt so discourteously with Henri Barbusse?

On the wharf he looked even taller than he was as he gravely helped the lady with the packages. Such a tall, such a frustrated man.
Not long afterwards Louis Aragon walked into the office. I recognised him before he recognised me. He was the same eager, well-dressed man. "I never expected to meet you here," he said to me. "Where have you been hiding?"

I told him.

"And your books?" he cried. "Your novels? Surely..."

I merely smiled.

I did not tell him about the publication of Pod Vlastyu Uglya in English under the title of "Goaf", nor did I mention The Crime of Peter Kropner, for I was ashamed of the Fortune Press. Failure compels reticence. Perhaps all failure is deserved.

We disposed of the preliminaries. His wife was well. They were staying with her mother, whom I knew was working in the Trade Delegation, as was her sister. My wife, too, was well, and so was our baby daughter. Her name?

I told him it was Maril. His eyebrows went up. I then told him that we had stuck the letter "l" on the end of Mary.

"Magnificent!" he breathed, almost in ecstasy.

Then he flung his bomb. "I'm out on bail," he said. "I am under interdi
tion all because of that poem I wrote, the one published in International Literature."

I smiled. "The one about the 'fat arsed bottles'?" I interjected.

He nodded. "That is the one," he told me. "It cannot possibly be called a misdemeanor, but I suppose they will get away with it and I will have to pay the penalty."

"We do not imprison writers for their excesses in this country," I pointed out.

"Mine was not an excess," he said. "It was real proletarian criticism. In this country perhaps your writers are not courageous enough." He smiled. Aragon always had a lovely smile. "You see, Harold," he said, "French law is more...more expansive. Sometimes it is so stupid that I am grieved...right down here." He laid his hand on his stomach. "No, no, I wouldn't try to ex-
plain. I haven't got the time."

We went into a huddle over the table by the window, the huge one which had been the target of early morning raiders on two occasions. He explained
to me that if he could get beyond extradition and stay thus over a given period the case against him would lapse, and that was his purpose in coming to London.

"Russia?" I suggested.

He nodded. "But how can I get there?" he went on. "If I contacted the Soviet consulate in Paris I would be apprehended immediately." If he could get to Russia he would have no further problem. His wife, being Russian, would follow him there.

I could see no actual difficulty if he conducted his business in London. He could make an application for a visa in Rosary Gardens, Kensington. All he had to do was to fill in a visa form and post it from here. After he had scrutinised the form I suggested that he should have a chat with Scheimmann. I left him and went along to Scheimmann's office and asked him if we would care to see Louis Aragon. His face beamed all the way up to the back of his bald crown.

"Aragon!" he cried. "The French author! Why, of course! Bring him here at once."

I went back to Louis. "Scheimmann wishes to see you," I told him. "You'd better come and keep me in the clear. Smuggling Frenchmen out of France!"

"Scheimmann," he mused. "Not Aaron Scheimmann, surely!" He rose to his feet. "But I thought he was dead," he muttered.

Both men met in the centre of the office. I left them grasping each others' hands. I was gone from the office when Scheimmann escorted Louis to the door. The matter of the visa was taken out of my care from that moment. I did not see Louis Aragon when he passed through London en route for Russia.

I have not met him since.

The great men of Russia passed through the office of Intourist. There was Pavlov, but he was merely rushed to the embassy. Rochelle Townsend told me that she did the translating when the great man met the scientists at the embassy. She also told me that in answer to a question about Freud and Jung he denounced both great men. And there was Mikhail Sholokhov.

Sholokhov came to London to meet his publishers, Putnam, and collect some of his royalties. Maisky put on an afternoon reception and asked me along,
much to the annoyance of Scheinmann, who kept an exacting control over his staff.

"You can go," he said to me, "seeing that Neisky wishes you."

I counted myself as being on the brink of redundancy from that moment, yet I went along to Kensington quite happily, for I wanted to meet the man who had scored so immense a success in the western literary world. I knew Garry Stevens, his translator, and I was glad because of the fame which had come to him, secondhand. Rochelle Townsend was present to act as interpreter. When I got there only a small gathering was present. Rose Macaulay came and had a chat with the Russian writer, and went away.

Sholokhov was not one of those huge Russian cossacks one meets in the presence of Cogol. They must breed small cossacks, too, on the Don country, for Sholokhov was one. He came and sat with Rochelle and myself and together we drank lemon tea. He asked me in Russian — he only spoke that language. I think — if I spoke Russian. I told him that I spoke it very badly, and he assured me that he would rather have me talk bad Russian than the most excellent English. And we all laughed.

I made my escape quite soon, for I was anxious not to upset Scheinmann more than I had done.

Later, the Russian Today Society put on a big show for Sholokhov in one of the galleries of a museum in Leicester Square, for which we all paid an entrance fee. Sholokhov might have been billed as the attraction, which brought a huge crowd, but there was one small, frail, aged person there called Beatrice Webb. The crowd milling about her did not break up when Sholokhov entered the place. It merely subsided about her.

When the time came for the Russian author to speak he soon had everybody fully amazed by the extraordinary rapidity with which he spoke his words. In all my life I have not heard a man speak so quickly. There was no music at all in his voice. Russians, generally, have little poetry in their speech on the large occasions. The only poet they ever produced was Trotsky. Maybe that was because he lived so much abroad that he absorbed the poetry of sound and diction. It is never an enjoyable experience to listen to a Russian poet speaking his verses.
Stevens did his best with the speech, and after that the crowd went on to
mill about Mrs. Webb.

Sholokhov has always been a very fortunate man. Then I was in Russia
there seemed to be only one book displayed on the stalls, that of Tikki Don,
in its various tomes. It flooded all the stalls in the Chinese Market in
Moscow. It was everywhere. I had a feeling that it would break hugely in the
outside world. No one ever discussed it in my presence all the time I was
there, probably because it was accepted as a tour de force. Even so, the
Russians were not so sure of its hugeness.

When it came into our language I bought my copy, and, I must confess, I
read it with fear and enjoyment. Perhaps the author was fortunate in his trans-
lator. As a novel it did break in a big way. Thomas Begg, who produced the
book for Putnam's told me that he had Sholokhov's novel at the same time as
he had Greenwood's Love on the Dole. But in circumstances which did not allow
him to publish both. He still regretted his decision, let the Greenwood novel
go out of his hands. It was just one of those things, he confessed to me as
we sat in a kind of underground cafe at the bottom of Ludgate Hill. "It would
have been most difficult for us to have completely cashed in on the full
demand," he said, offering that judgment as a balm to himself.

I offer no criticism of Sholokhov's novel. It was, I think, the only one
worthy of the fame he has achieved. Quiet Flows the Don will continue
through long time. His peasant novels are, I think, worthless, and his novels
written in the Stalin period are beneath all contempt. There is that strange
fate of character hovering over those 'major works' of that awful period of
His and Gorky's novels of the revolution, and which brought the same denoue-
ment to Klim Samghin as to Gregor Melekhov. They remain through time as the
"classless" heroes of that revolution. Samghin's corpse was kicked into the
gutter by a Red soldier, and told to "get out of history". No red army man
would, or could, have used the term, but Gorky, or Stalin's mentor, made him
do so. As to Sholokhov, both Gregor and Aksinia passed out of his story as
they deserved. For both authors to bring their dreams over so many reams of
manuscript and leave them as things of such contempt passes my comprehensions.

As I write I am reminded of that evening I spent with Mikhail Zenkevitch
in the Writers' Club in Moscow listening to the proletarian poets declaiming their proletarian poetry from their proletarian manuscripts. "Is it good poetry?" I asked him in a whisper. He smiled, took a sip of his Caucasian wine, and shook his head. "No," he said, "it is just ordinary rotten poetry." Which surprised me.

Maisky and his wife sometimes asked Phyllis and me to their rooms at the top of the embassy. They were always kind to us both. Madame Maisky was an endearingly charming woman. When we first met her, some few weeks before we were married, at their home in Kew, she did not speak a word of English. When she came back with Maisky on his appointment as ambassador she spoke and thought in English. We dined with them in a large and well-appointed room. We were accepted as their friends. They never visited us in our little home in Princess Square. When our daughter arrived they were both as delighted as we were. They met her but once, at an open air function somewhere in West London.

Maisky invited me to spend the evening with him when the three soviet airmen set out to break the longest drop from an aeroplane. I believe that he was anxious and worried, and that he wanted to get away from his aides and officials while he waited. He did not take me up to his apartment to join his wife, but took me into a smaller room which he called his den. There was a fire burning in the grate. We sat opposite to each other, ate cakes and drank lemon tea. I did not sense that he was labouring under some strain at the time, but, on reflection, I realise that he was extremely apprehensive. He was a good raconteur. His command of English was sufficient to his purpose, although at times he had to fumble for the appropriate word. He told me that night that, apart from Russian, he was now fully in possession of four other languages.

Throughout the evening he regaled me with stories of the fantastic exploits of the revolutionaries. I was held in trance by what he told me. He knew his immediate history better than most of his London contemporaries. There was one magnificent story which took long in the telling, and which during its recital was interrupted twice by telephone calls. On the second occasion, after he had put the phone down, he said to me: "That was the
Manchester Guardian editor to tell me that the airmen are not down yet. He is keeping me in touch." And then he went on with his story of a good Bolshevnik who was employed as a scullion in the Winter Palace, and whose revolutionary duty it was to hide explosives in the common bedroom high up in the palace. He recounted most amusingly the dreadful experience of the man when fire broke out following a fratricidal conflict between two of his brother scullions. Fortunately the fire was extinguished and the man's secret left undisclosed.

It was long past midnight when I left the embassy. By that time no news had been received of the exploit in Siberia.

There was also that occasion when, on a Saturday afternoon, I accompanied the ambassador and his wife to Box Hill, a favourite place of his. As we passed along Tooting Broadway there was a near collision with a cyclist. Our chauffeur extricated the car, but not before the irate man had stuck his head over the door of our car and had yelled at Maisky: "You bloody capitalist!"
My father died early in May, in the year 1935.

I made the journey by overnight train to Newcastle, and arrived in Ryton in good time to make the remainder of the journey to Black Hill, where he had died in the home of one of my step-sisters.

It was a most beautiful day.

The coffin lay in the front room of a little semi-detached, and about it were gathered some of my father's sisters, none of whom were at all distressed. I found it a distressing experience looking down upon him lying so still and white and clean. Some of our relations had made the journey from Hunwick, men and women I had known and had forgotten. Sarah, my step-mother, kept aloof from the gathering. When the Methodist ministers arrived she left all the obsequies to the family, emerging when it was time to take my brother George's arm and head the cortege.

They bore him into a huge Methodist chapel, which was no different from any other like chapel in the country, only it was vast and cold, and forbidding. The men from the old pit he had managed at Burnopfield set the coffin down alongside the penitent form, behind which the ministers took their places. We praddled through the ceremony and came to the moment when one of the minister's chose to speak a panegyric on "our departed brother". He was something of a psychologist, and I suspect that many of the sentences he uttered he had composed long ago when my father had contrived to create pandemonium at quarter day.

Sarah did not make my father's corpse the gift of one tear. Proudly she
walked out of the cemetery. She walked as one might who has bestowed laurels and is to be in receipt of fresh gifts. She had buried two husbands, my father being the least and the kindest.

In the semi-detached we were given refreshment and then we began to depart. Before my brothers and I went to bid her good-bye she took me upstairs to her bedroom where she opened a drawer and took out of it the watch and Albert that had been presented to my grandfather in the year 1905. "Your father said that you were to have this," she said to me. "I have respected his wishes."

I followed her downstairs.

We saw the Hunwick people off and then my brothers and their wives went on their several ways.

And so the chapter was closed.

My father's struggles under the earth were ended, all fifty three of them. A life time under the lip of the rock, and not a useless life time. Coal is the only mineral mined in quantity that glitters with the lives of past ages. I believe that my father enjoyed every one of his struggles with coal, and that he accepted the profession of mining as the one great challenge to his being. He often spoke about "bonnie coal", but, then, coal is never dull, never without life, never without the life it has lived within its own ageless fastnesses. It is so alive that it gives its own voice to its own pains and its own raptures whenever it is dragged out of its own layered imprisonments. It is as if it remembers its forests. The earth weighs upon it with all the enormity of unchaptored time, and yet the earth is incapable of disturbing its impregnable aloofness even when it has reburied it by forcing the floor of the mine to kiss its roof. It is all part of a monstrous world, and it has always felt the need for men who have dared to brave the monstrous.

I did not meet my step-mother again after I quit her house.

At the end of that year I left the employ of Intourist Limited. What is more, I never came into contact with Aaron Scheinmann again. There was a toying with a film corporation which wanted to make a film of The Crime of Peter Roper, but it came to nothing. Other people took over the plot of my book. I had long despaired of ever making a show in the world of literature. I ought to have taken a much deeper notice of the harsh criticism which Philip
Toynbee concocted in a small book he once published when he was sheltering on the edge of Marxism. But I did not. I went on writing in my own seccesies, tempting no man. Last Cage Down had been published by Wishart's, and they, too, had been surprised by the lack of interest shown in my work. I volunteered to relieve them of their agreement to publish my next two works, and this they were more than glad to do. Had I known that they were planning to take over the publication of all marxist emanations from Moscow I would not have accepted their proposal to publish that ill-fated novel. Edgell Rickword was a kind and most gentle fellow. So was Carmon. So was Wishart.

The world of advertising and of tourism had no further need of my services. I was not unhappy to get out. I became free to move about the London that was developing, the London of deep proletarian despair.

In due time I rejoined the queue at Walworth Road, and in between signing on times I searched the libraries, and the great one in the British Museum, for matter for future reference. Maisky was much too busy to be helpful, but in odd moments he gave me journalistic work to do. I have always been a failure as a journalist. The narrow columns and the frigid paragraphs could not provide for me any urge to write. It is rare that I have ever achieved publication in the newspaper world.

Bob Ellis, on the other hand, was an extraordinarily gifted journalist. When he made contact with Hayter Preston on The Sunday Referee, he brought me into association with a man who was gifted beyond my comprehension. He saw a story in every rag that passed down Fleet Street. When he discovered that I knew Maisky he was quick to suggest that I should approach the plenipotentiary and request him to receive Ellis and him at the chancellery. This I was able to arrange, and one fine day we set off for Kensington to meet him. He asked me to make the formal introduction, and as soon as that was over Bill Preston fell upon him with a proposal to write the life of Stalin for a particular newspaper. He had all the papers ready for syndication. All he needed was Stalin's written agreement to go forward.

I believe that Maisky was excited by the idea. When he had disposed of the matter he began to talk, and I must say that he astonished me by saying some of the things he did say, things that one would not have been allowed to
breathe even in Bush House. When young Vinogradov, the Press Attache, joined us, he took the safety-catch off and the talk became even more alarming. Maisky said what he wished to say about quite a number of governments.

The year wandered to its dreary close, and then King George Vth died. I disregarded much of the chatter about the young king and Mrs Simpson until one night I met Bob and he was able to explain the Fleet Street point of view, and thereafter we jointly followed the great debate with deepening interest.

The year 1936 was an interesting year to live through. The abdication was a tremendous closure to a disastrous period. Bob and I watched the "royal tragedy" deepen. I do not recall how we were able to get into the smoking room of the members of the House of Commons, but I believe it was on the invitation of Willie Gallacher. After a drink he left us and as we made our way out by the grand staircase we fortunately came across Aneurin Bevan. He was sitting at a table and having tea.

He greeted Bob effusively. He asked us both to sit down and partake of his meal. The House was standing adjourned after having listened to Mr. Baldwin's long statement on the difficulty of morganatic marriage. Bob was anxious to know how the Labour Party could cash in on the constitutional issue.

"It's Baldwin, Bob," he said. "The man holds all the aces. Not one of us will get within miles of him when we resume."

"Not even Churchill?" Bob asked.

"Churchill!" His voice seemed to glitter. "Who the hell can row a burnt boat, Bob? I know one who can't, and he is Winston Churchill. There's a man who can't perform miracles."

"Are you going to join in?" Bob asked.

"Not bloody likely, Bob!" he snapped. "I'll be content to leave all that to Warton and whatever Sassenach who wants to lend a hand. No, Bob, there's no way any man can extricate a king from his folly."

We sat talking until the call came for the resumption and then we walked into the lobby. As Bevan drifted away so the policeman drifted us out into the corridor.

The day came when the young king abdicated and a new king was proclaimed.
A few days later I met Bob by appointment. We adjourned to our usual Lyons. As we sat we were joined by Hayter Preston. Before him Bob laid his plan, which was to write a short book on the abdication which would contain all the documents. All we had to do was to find some publisher to whom we could sell the idea. Speed was of the veriest essence, so he insisted. But who? Preston found the answer.

"You want to see Tom Ragg," he said. And thereupon Preston, the Vanoc II of the now defunct Sunday Referee, pulled out a pad and wrote upon it:

"Dear Ragg,

These two friends of mine have a proposal to make which I am sure will interest you.

Hayter Preston."

"You’ll find him at Routledges," he said. "Go and see him right away."

It was in the morning, about eleven, when we called at the outer offices Routledge's. Maurice Richardson, clad in puice pants and a yellow pullover, took us in tow and set us down before Messrs Ragg and Franklin, who were then running the publishinghouse. I left Bob to do all the talking. It was soon clear to us both that they were "sold on the idea". They had certain doubts to resolve, and so they asked for time. We agreed to come back after lunch.

When we arrived at Broadway House we were taken straight into the big room, and Ragg told us that they were quite sure that they could market a book such as we had suggested, but it had to be done quickly. If the book was to be worth anything at all it would have to be on the book stalls by New Year's Day. They had an agreement ready for us to sign. They made a small payment to each of us and we departed.

Our next duty was to get copies of the most reputable newspaper. I suggested the Manchester Guardian. Mr O'Connor was there when we arrived and in a short time we came into possession of all the copies dealing with the crisis. Armed with these we made our way to my home where we commandeered our little front room and settled down to our task. A messenger ran between my home and Broadway House. By the time we had finished the story of the ab- dication Hansard had published the debate in two issues, and these, the speeches, we slipped into the story. We chose to call the book, The Abdic-
tion of Edward VIII. Bob insisted that the author should be J. Lincoln White. Publication day was January 5th, 1937. The first print of the book was five thousand copies, an amount which staggered me. It actually sold over forty thousand copies. As a book it fell as flat as a pancake on the reviewers' desks, and so the press comment was almost negligible. Perhaps it was all we deserved, for we had deliberately cashed in on the travail of a family we did not know. There was no adverse comment. For me it was an experience. As I watched Ellis work on that task I realised just how unaware I was of journalism and just how easily he took it in his stride. He was a born commentator. He possessed a magic pen. He deserved a better fate than the one reserved for him.

We tried to do another book, one which examined what we called the monarchic pyramid extant in this country of ours. Routledge turned the idea down flat. We toiled on and finished it. Bob took it to Gollancz. The firm read it. They refused it and returned it to us. Then, to our surprise, they sent for it again, and again they returned it. We often wondered why men like John Strachey and Harold Laski...could cast their votes on the Left Book Club against our book. At that time Bob was eking out part of his livelihood on Tribune. One of his chores was with Strachey, putting the paper to bed. One night after they had finished their task Bob asked Strachey if he had ever come across a manuscript called, "Monarchy and Co Ltd." Strachey was quite taken aback. "Do you know who wrote it?" he asked. "We all thought that J. Lincoln White was a bit phoney."

"It was," said Bob. "It was me and another chap."

Strachey was most upset. He did offer to try, but the mood of the market had gone. Bob asked him to forget it, and we laid it away as men do a corpse.

It was impossible for me to make a break into Fleet Street, for I did not possess the simplest of the attributes of a journalist, nor the flair. Life became a tiresome search for work, any work. Strangely enough I was barred from finding work as a labourer, for I was now classified as a clerk by the ministry. So the year 1937 floated away with all its constitutional disturbances, the triumphal crowning of a new monarch, and a deepening crisis over the capitalist world.
Something happened at the counter of the Exchange in Walworth Road. The clerk asked me one day if I was ex-service, and when I produced my demobilisation papers he made the necessary note on my claim. Shortly afterwards I became a temporary civil servant in the offices of the Ministry of Labour at Kew.

Heavens only knows that the wages were pitiful, but I had the satisfaction of knowing that had I remained a miner my take-home pay would have been considerably less. I had that information from Blyton and Jos Mackey in Shields. In my spare time I worked on a new novel, and from that act there exuded some hope. The denizen of the literary garret lives on hope. To this task I carried the tricks I had gleaned from Ellis and Hayter-Preston. I worked assiduously. As a novel it grew from within me, just like a first novel. All men have the stuff of a novel within them that aches to find expression. From there one must proceed under the impulse of imagination. The difficulties must be faced and overcome. I felt like one who had not the power to overcome. Had I not proved it? And yet, as an old man, I am still unsoured by the lack of success. I can still lay my hand upon my old heart and whisper to my own inner being that so many who have plodded on have not all been unworthy of the success which has attended their efforts. Midnight oil is a precious substance.

I worked at Kew until the war broke out and the office there was abandoned. I was transferred to Walworth Road. It was with something akin to emotion when I presented myself to the manager of the old Exchange. I was given odd jobs for about a week and then I was given a stool at the counter, and I became one of the vast army of clerks who made out claims for benefit. In time I was given a box, and became responsible for a long queue of applicants for benefit. I did all the chores associated with the payment of the claims. In time, our duties became thoroughly mixed up with military registration, and this entailed a lot of overtime for the staff.

We took our work in our strides during the phoney war period. Before war broke out Phyllis had been persuaded to take into her care a male child whose mother had died shortly after giving him birth. Our possession of the child enabled her to accompany the two children when they were evacuated on the outbreak of the war. We kissed a hurried good-bye on Waterloo station and I
went back home like so many thousands of London fathers, sad and apprehensive. I was in time to hear the Prime Minister make his announcement of war. The sirens weaved and we all became tense. I had to wait until well into the next week before I heard that my small family was billeted in Gillingham, Dorset. I took the first opportunity to pay them a visit, and found that my precious brood was in a house on cold sufferance. The only satisfaction we derived from the evacuation was that our child was continuing her education.

Eleven weeks later Phyllis came home with the two children, and life became more or less normal once more. Unfortunately, the child's education was deeply curtailed. We made the best of our lives until the German army began its invasion of the Low Countries. I sensed the danger and I made fresh arrangements to evacuate my family. I had reason to be anxious. The rest of my wife's family, her mother, her only sister and her sister's child were marooned in Paris.

Events followed in swift succession. We were fairly safe in England. We were deeply perturbed by what was happening in France. The last card we received from our relations simply stated: "We are moving into the country. Paris is in panic. Mum."

Poor dears. They were caught in the torrent of a despairing people fleeing before the war-machine of Adolph Hitler. We could only imagine what had happened to them. We held no communication with them until the war ended, and then we learned how they had set out in search of some refuge. They got deep into Normandy before they decided to trudge back to Paris. When they arrived at their home they found it had been turned into a billet for German soldiers. They squeezed into a corner of their home and there they stayed. A posse of German soldiers and gendarmes arrived shortly after they got home and took poor old Mum to a concentration camp in Besançon. Aged, depressed, enfeebled she was eventually returned to the care of her daughter, and the two women made the best of their unfortunate predicament. When the war ended she came back to England to live with us. She was old and broken. Life had no meaning for her. She died a few years later in Somerset.

It became increasingly difficult to live in London after I had seen my little family into its second evacuation. They arrived safely in Taunton.
I did my best to continue living in Kennington, where life was a matter of work and an endless search for food. It became infinitely worse when the storm broke.

I had erected an Anderson shelter in the back garden on the outbreak of the war. It stood until the bombers came. That Saturday afternoon when the defences of the city were pierced by the bombers was part of a lovely day. I was in the Museum Library studying Engels' articles on the Franco-Prussian War when the sirens went. All the staff and readers were conducted to some weird place where the authorities apparently stored broken sculptures, a tall, cold, stone room. I stayed an hour or so and then I left the building. Outside, the city was edging up to a new experience, and with a fortitude I had not anticipated. I walked to Leicester Square and took the train to Kennington.

The all-clear sounded and life became more or less normal again. The next phase of the new life came when darkness fell. As it enclosed London so it deepened the flames on the stricken docks, and brought a blood-red illumination over the city. Soon the sirens sounded and London passed under a blitz attack which was to continue a long time.

On the third night of the blitz a bomber let fall a stick of bombs on a line parallel to Kennington Park Road. The first bomb made havoc of part of the Art College at the entrance to Princes Square, and the last one on The Horns Hotel, which had stood in its own niche in history since the leaders of the Chartist Movement carried their petition out of it and put it in a cab and took it through the rain to the House of Commons, and into the derision of "all good men and true". The second bomb of the stick fell near to where I was sheltering. The front of my house had been considerably wrecked by the first bomb, and the back portion was greatly damaged by the second one.

I often relive the moments of that explosion. I was lying in the shelter when the bombs fell. The second bomb was a shattering experience. The shelter in which I crouched was no great distance from the point of impact, less than a hundred yards. Between me and the bomb were two walls running each side of a narrow lane. The immense flash opened up the darkness for a moment of weird time. The shock ripped through the intervening walls and opened momentarily the crudely constructed shelter roof. The earth piled upon it fell into the
confined space of the shelter, and then the roof closed again. Everything seemed to happen in one brilliantly illuminated moment of time, a moment in which the surrounding atmosphere was swept away and the vacuum was filled with a rush of wind. No explosion I had ever seen or contrived compared with that catastrophic rebuttal of time and space. I lay still, unable to move. My paralysis passed and I crawled up to the opening of the shelter. I looked up at my home and saw it strangely lit by a fire which raged as a result of the second bomb which had ignited a furniture store. The fire spread with alarming rapidity straight up to the roof. Fires seemed to be getting all Kennington.

Suddenly an air raid warden was standing over me and asking me if I was hurt. He had simply walked through my home. I told him that I was all right. He insisted on evacuating me to what he called "a safer place". This proved to be a large brick shelter in the square. I walked with him through my home on a carpet of broken window glass. I spent the rest of the night in the shelter, and when morning came and the all-clear had been sounded I went back into my shattered home. The effects of the two blasts had been weird. The front door was lying up the stairway, handsomely laid between the wall and the bannister. All the windows in the house were shattered. There was broken glass everywhere. Not a picture on the wall had been disturbed! Soot and dust lay on every floor. Furniture and beds had been flung about haphazardly.

All that day I tried to clear up the broken glass and crockery, and righting the things that had been thrown about. I rehung the front door and fixed the lock, and I blocked the gaping holes that once had held windows. Night came and the terror fell once more upon the city, scorching it into mad confusion. The time distance between the blitz on London and the scientific destruction of Dresden was not so great, but the technological distance was immense. What, one wonders, would have been the effect on London and the cities of England had the German blitz been as scientifically executed as was the bombing of Germany in the last year of the war?

Before three weeks had passed I was almost in despair. My domestic world had vanished. The hours spent in the Exchange left no time for me to acquire provisions had it been possible to find places where they could be obtained. I
struggled through the weeks and then, one morning, I received an ultimatum from Phyllis. She had found a house in Taunton and she had agreed to take it on a mortgage. All the documents were ready for my signature and I must come just as soon as I could, otherwise she would return to London.

I had a long interview with the manager of the Exchange. He sympathised with me in my plight, but he could offer me no comfort. I gave him my notice there and then. He asked me to hold on for a moment and he would see what he could about arranging a transfer to Taunton. Two days later he called me in and said that a transfer was impossible. I was paid my wages at the end of the week, and I quitted London.

Arrived in Taunton I was soon taken on to the staff at that Exchange, and there I remained until 1947, when a mass clearance of the temporary posts in the civil service was carried out. I was glad to escape from the ample coils of the civil service.

It was that very day in 1945, when the polls were declared which substituted Clement Attlee for Winston Churchill in the government of the country, and, incidentally, passed the representation of Taunton from the close grip of the Conservative Party to an unknown politician called Victor Collins, that Phyllis arrived in Taunton with her mother. In some miraculous manner the war had passed over her conscious being. Yet she was a human wreck. She had nothing to tell of her life in occupied Paris. We soon discovered that her own nightmarish experiences had deprived her of her once fine intellectual powers. Her memory was overlaid by monstrous strains and buried deep within her. No longer could she talk of those early days in the Social Democratic Party when she knew H.M. Hyndman, days when she had often befriended Herbie Morrison, as she always called him. Her's were now days wherein she was a cypher, a most diminished person.

She lived out the rest of her life with us in Taunton. She died.

We ought to have returned to London, only Phyllis was reluctant to do so. Circumstances altered intentions. Our daughter was soon to prepare to take her scholarship, and when this was gained there was no point in going back. And there was our adopted son, Michael. He became progressively lame. The doctor diagnosed tuberculosis in the right hip, and had him removed to the
Children's Orthopaedic Hospital in Bath for remedial treatment which stretched over three and a half years. And I had also rediscovered my flair for politics and I had grown appreciative of Victor Collins. By the time we had brought our little family into a deep concentration of life, and we had seen the old lady into her last resting place, there was no point in our going back to London.
Somerset disclosed its own tremendous beauty to me without hurry. It does this to all strangers. It is the most unhurried county in all England. It has many blushes which it hides behind a deep shyness. It is the last county in England to be brought under the twin of the capitalist mode of production. Today it is still far removed from the turmoil of the industrialised counties. Over its broad acres the farmer still performs the feudal chores and is content in the belief that he will remain forever outside the zone of toil.

I watched a man one morning break his first furrow with his two share tractorised plough, and I marvelled at his dexterity. He told me, when I asked him if he possessed a car, that he did not think he would pass his test. The mechanised instruments have been passed on to the farm worker from the factory and have driven the mighty horses away from the rural compactment and out of the lease of untold generations. In his dignified approach to his task of ploughing he shamed for me the man who knows no more about a car than its capacity to speed along the motorways. I watched him lay his course with the aid of a long pole before he proceeded to draw his double furrow across the uncharted stubble. Had a surveyor been present he could not have indicated a straighter line. And this unlettered farm worker did it by judgment. He crossed that field bending sideways over the machine and gazing upon nothing but the untrodden earth. When I returned from the office the ploughing was finished and all the field lay scored across its red breast by lines as straight as any ruled across a page of music. The upturned sod blushed rosily as it lay in the sun.

It was not until I was given the job of rounding up the dodgers, and there were many, and getting them to the medical board at Taunton that I began
novel, the last one that I will ever write. It was to be my last excursion into
the warrens beneath the clogged earth of Durham. I told no one about it. How many
publishers refused it I cannot say. Eventually, Boardman's brought it out in
1947. It proved to be my most successful effort. Unfortunately it exhausted its
paper allocation long before it ran out on its appeal. Quite naturally it made
its greatest appeal in the north. I think that it is still remembered there.

The Earth Beneath was my one novel that got across. Comment did not spill
over into the large areas of the newspapers, nevertheless it was most gratifying
to find myself being discussed at last. Even the peans rang out in America when
John Day published it on the advice of Francis Hackett.

I met Hackett in London. He was a quaint little Irish-American, who pos-
seessed a most interesting and mixed up brogue. I enjoyed my afternoon with him
and his wife. When the novel was published in New York it carried a blurb by
Hackett. Perhaps I may be pardoned for quoting from it: "The Earth Beneath
I feel, is a moving and memorable book....the best thing about Harold Reesop's
talent is his crisp and vivid sense of people in action....no novel lives unless
it magic easement is opened by an artist. The Earth Beneath is an alien world
vivified by a discerning witness to its burdens and nobilities."

After I had quitted the civil service I took up an appointment with a firm
of builders which was anxious to cash in on the housing problem. Their houses
proved to be cheap and quite nasty. The firm did not get off the ground. I
felt liberated politically while with that firm, and I was able to help Victor
Collins nurse the Taunton constituency which he had grabbed from the Tory party.
Together we roamed the parliamentary constituency, and together we watched the
appeal of the Labour Party droop and die in the south west.

The Labour movement is a jungle of the most conflicting political interests
imaginable. As an organisation it possessed the one precise purpose, that of
counting votes. Men and women attach themselves to it with massive fervour, and,
consequently become the earnest advocates of the dogmas of any roaming dogmatist.
They are willing converts to a doctrine that masquerades under the aliases of
social democracy. They live and die in the belief that all their energy is ex-
pended for some immediate purpose which will sustain social democracy through
all time. It is the over-riding purpose of their political activities, and they
cheerfully accept any betrayal, no matter how cynical, in the belief that such a betrayal is necessary in order to protect and sustain the march to socialism.

I have yet to meet a politician in the Labour Movement who has taken the trouble to try and understand the capitalist mode of production. The commodity relationship which begets the capitalist mode is beyond the understanding of the politicians who seek the suffrages of ordinary working class people. I have been invited to present myself as a candidate for parliamentary honours by various constituency Labour Parties. The last occasion was prior to the 1955 general election.

The secretary of the South-West organisation had been determined to get me to fight a parliamentary seat. Ted Rees was a decent chap, one who had spent all his life organising forlorn Labour Parties. I agreed to attend the meeting of the North Devon Labour Party just to make up the number at a selection conference. Ted merely wangled me into the candidature. I made my way to Barnstaple from Taunton a free man. I returned home that same night, a parliamentary candidate!

The moment for action came and I duly went forth to North Devon. For some reason I was accommodated in a hotel in Ilfracombe. I was not even provided with a car. I made my way backwards and forwards to Barnstaple on the local bus. Before many days had elapsed I had become acutely aware of the fact that very few of the stalwarts of the party were prepared to lend me a hand. They were, indeed, a most unhappy lot. When I did insist upon a car they found one for me on a scrap heap. Long before nomination day arrived I had made up my mind to refuse to go forward.

The one reason why I did not carry out my intention to defect from the fight was that I would be letting Ted Rees down should I do so. I had no reason to be sorry for the North Devon party, for, in actuality, it did not exist. I did suggest that my agent should withhold my nomination papers until the last moment. I knew that if I did cry off, the Labour vote, whatever it might amount to, would hive off to Jeremy Thorpe, who was making a great impression on the young electorate.

Thorpe was a likeable fellow who possessed a strong flair for the task.
of electioneering. He was a young, happy and serenely confident man. He possessed, in addition to his other virtues, an astonishing wardrobe. I think I admired most his total brown rig-out. I confess that my first glimpse of him gave me what in Durham might be described as "a real turn". He appeared to be miles out and away from the youths of the day who were experimenting in clothes. And he was a most charming man. Sometimes, when I read Hansard, I find myself wondering how he came to be so belligerent a politician.

The night before Nomination Day I fought my fight with myself and made the decision to go forward. My agent and I deposited the money and I went forth to fight...alone.

It rained in torrents all the afternoon and evening of polling day. The booths closed on a small ballot. The count began almost immediately. I asked my agent to come and tell me when I had saved my deposit. He duly came and I took no further interest in North Devon. My tally of votes was 7271. Had they gone to Thorpe instead of to me, Jeremy would have entered parliament five years earlier than he did for that forlorn constituency.

I still regret my cowardice. Had the prominent members of the party played the game I might not even now be regretful of the fact that I did not abstain from the contest. Every time I pass through Barnstaple I hang my head in shame.

The next time I saw Bill Blyton in London he asked me, almost accusingly: "Was that you who fought North Devon?"

And when I did confess that it was my own unhappy self, he gave me a long half-humorous glance. "But what the bloody hell did ya want to come to a bloody place like this for?"
In the summer of 1955 Bob Ellis quitted London. His family, a boy and a girl, had passed into their own lives. For quite a long time there had been a deep rift between Bob and his wife. I was not aware of his illness, and I did not feel happy when he went with his sister to a little hamlet off the road from Kilgetty to Milford Haven. I was not surprised to learn that he had deserted Fleet Street. He offered me neither explanation nor excuse for his action.

We had sustained each other over many years when we were isolated from the left wing movements which we had always sought to foster. I still retain the letters he wrote to me over the long years of our association, for they contain so much deeply felt and well-written criticisms of the Labour Party. He failed to forgive the "parliament boys" for giving themselves such a large increase in salary in 1945. I sometimes wonder what he would have had to say had he lived to review the immense salaries the present members of parliament receive. There was a no more peregrious observer of the Labour scene in the whole of British journalism than Ellis. One has only to rediscover the man in the columns of The Sunday Referee in order to be convinced of that.

The story of the closing years of his life was one of peace. Towards the end of 1957 I went down to Jeffreyston to stay with him and his sister, Mary. I was then nursing a broken arm. That he had changed was obvious, but I had no reason to feel alarmed by his condition. Now, as I look back, I can see how surely his life was closing. He had the small villa, the surrounding garden, the hens and the muscovies, to smile at and to enjoy. It all appeared to be so idyllic. I did not perceive that he was nearing his end.

Mary went on a trip to Canada in the summer of 1958, leaving Bob alone in the house, to look after the dog and the stock. It has always been a mystery to me that a man could die in the very centre of a compact village and not be
maintained his anti-bomb stand so long. After all, as an aspiring cabineteer, he could hardly expect to gain office while opposing the bomb - particularly could he not be appointed to the Foreign Office, which is his present aim, and at the same time advocate virtual disarmament for Britain. I could even mark it in his favour that he chose to change his tune now rather than find excuses for changing after coming into office. After all, so many have promised the moon and then swiftly settled for a marble after getting there. How many of those who now denounce him would retain their principles five minutes once installed in office?

"It has been plain to me for a long time that Nye was seeking a suitable opportunity to make his outward peace with Gaitskell. So long as there was a chance of Gaitskell falling foul of the Party, Nye could afford to abide his time. Now, however, that for some time Gaitskell has achieved almost an unanimous approval, and with an election on the way, soon or early, in the next couple of years, he had to make his peace with his chief or be left out when the plums are handed out. He has apparently abandoned all hope of the Premiership - as well he might, for Gaitskell is so much younger - and has settled for the Foreign Office. True, in another Labour Government, Gaitskell could hardly leave him right outside, but the Party would be placated were he to give Nye the Health or the Labour Ministry, or some such less plum. But Nye wanted a move up before he resigned from the last government, and Attlee's failure to give him it (and especially his appointment of Gaitskell from obscurity to the Chancellorship, which angered Nye violently) was really the cause of his resignation. It now seems that Nye has had to set a limit to his aspirations, wherefore he settled for the F.O. and makes friends with his rival in order to make sure he gets it.

"Remember, Nye is sixty, and must make the hurdle in the next Labour government, or not at all. He simply can't afford to wait longer. That is the crux and the explanation of his performance at the Conference.

"In a way he chose a lucky moment. For now that the Russians have let off their sparkler, folks will think that he has been tipped off about it. I have seen the suggestion in the press (notably the Beaverbrook press, which has long been Nye's mouthpiece) but it is highly unlikely that Krushchev told him anything. Nye really had to make his peace at this Conference - in case the elec-
tion came before the next one. But the coincidence of the satellite is a happy one for him. He will now appear completely justified, whether it is thought he was tipped off or not. And he must be happy about it, too. He has got out of the Tribune commitment in the nick of time.

"How oppose the hydrogen bomb when the Russians doubtless have an ICBM capable of blowing us off the map? You and I may think that we have to take fifth place to the Russians and the Americans with or without the bomb, but the mass of the people do not want that, not even in the Labour Party. So Nye has to get himself on the popular beam altogether. And the great bulk of the Labour Party will approve his new position, and ascribe it either to his great pull with the Russians (a pure fiction) or his tremendous percipience in things political (another fiction). For Nye's abilities are nowhere near what some folk appear to think. After all, he has been in the House of Commons close on thirty years, and, as a Miners' M.P. in a day when the Miners' Group mattered, was very well placed in the running. Yet, with all his ambition and regard for Bevan, he is only now showing signs of really getting anywhere. Which does not say much for ability.

"If he had had any outstanding figures to contend against, or of a burning sincerity had seemed more important to him than office, one could allow for his lagging in the race. But Nye has always looked for power and if he had shown a spark of the capacity with which some people credit him (particularly the old College folk, and notably Craik) he should have dominated the Labour Party long ago.

"The ball could have been at the feet of an able man, undeterred by principles when MacDonald went out. Yet, who emerged after the short Lansbury interlude? Messrs Attlee and Morrison, later Cripps and Bevin, and a few others of no marked note. With all his opportunities Nye simply had not the capacity to hit the political jackpot. And now he is compelled to play second fiddle to Gaitskell, who is virtually a new comer to the party, and a baby in the House of Commons. When an ambitious man who owns and accepts no obligations to anybody but himself arrives at that position in the course of thirty years one is justified in refusing to perceive in him any marked ability. Which makes me sorry for the Tribune bunch! Nye has advanced from an iconoclast to an ikon!"